LEXMARK™

X73x Series

User's Guide

Contents

Paper and specialty media guidelines...74

Printing...80

Copying..90

E-mailing..103

Contents

3

Faxing...109

Scanning to an FTP address...132

Scanning to a computer or flash drive...137

Understanding printer menus..141

Maintaining the printer...225

Contents

Administrative support...250

Troubleshooting..252

Notices...307

Contents

6

Safety information

Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

This product uses a printing process that heats the print media, and the heat may cause the media to release emissions. You must understand the section in your operating instructions that discusses the guidelines for selecting print media to avoid the possibility of harmful emissions.

CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

Use care when you replace a lithium battery.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace it only with the same or an equivalent type of lithium battery. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to move it safely.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Use the handholds located on both sides and rear of the printer to lift it.
- Make sure your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Before setting up the printer, make sure there is adequate clearance around it.

Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

Use only the telecommunications (RJ-11) cord provided with this product or a 26 AWG or larger replacement when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a professional service person.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are installing an Internal Solutions Port (ISP) after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are installing memory or option cards sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going to the printer.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are installing an optional tray after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord, the USB cable, and the Ethernet cable before continuing.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

Learning about the printer

Thank you for choosing this printer!

We've worked hard to make sure it will meet your needs.

To start using your new printer right away, use the setup materials that came with the printer, and then skim the *User's Guide* to learn how to perform basic tasks. To get the most out of your printer, read the *User's Guide* carefully, and make sure you check the latest updates on our Web site.

We're committed to delivering performance and value with our printers, and we want to make sure you're satisfied. If you do encounter any problems along the way, one of our knowledgeable support representatives will be delighted to help you get back on track fast. And if you find something we could do better, please let us know. After all, you are the reason we do what we do, and your suggestions help us do it better.

Finding information about the printer

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions: • Connecting the printer • Installing the printer software	Setup documentation—The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available on the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com/publications/**.
Additional setup and instructions for using the printer: • Selecting and storing paper and specialty media • Loading paper • Performing printing, copying, scanning, and faxing tasks, depending on your printer model • Configuring printer settings • Viewing and printing documents and photos • Setting up and using printer software • Setting up and configuring the printer on a network, depending on your printer model • Caring for and maintaining the printer • Troubleshooting and solving problems	*User's Guide*—The *User's Guide* is available on the *Software and Documentation* CD. For updates, check our Web site at **www.lexmark.com/publications/.**
Help using the printer software	Windows or Mac Help—Open a printer software program or application, and then click **Help**. Click ⓘ to view context-sensitive information. **Notes:** • The Help installs automatically with the printer software. • The printer software is located in the printer Program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.

What are you looking for?	Find it here
The latest supplemental information, updates, and technical support: • Troubleshooting hints and tips • Frequently asked questions • Documentation • Driver downloads • Live chat support • E-mail support • Telephone support	Lexmark Support Web site—**support.lexmark.com** **Note:** Select your region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site. Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your region or country can be found on the Support Web site or on the printed warranty that came with your printer. Record the following information (located on the store receipt and the back of the printer), and have it ready when you contact support so that they may serve you faster: • Machine Type number • Serial number • Date purchased • Store where purchased
Warranty information	Warranty information varies by country or region: • **In the US**—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or at **support.lexmark.com.** • **Rest of the world**—See the printed warranty that came with your printer.

Selecting a location for the printer

⚠ **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

When selecting a location for the printer, leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors. If you plan to install any options, leave enough room for them also. It is important to:

- Make sure airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
  – Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators
  – Free from direct sunlight, humidity extremes, or temperature fluctuations
  – Clean, dry, and free of dust
- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:
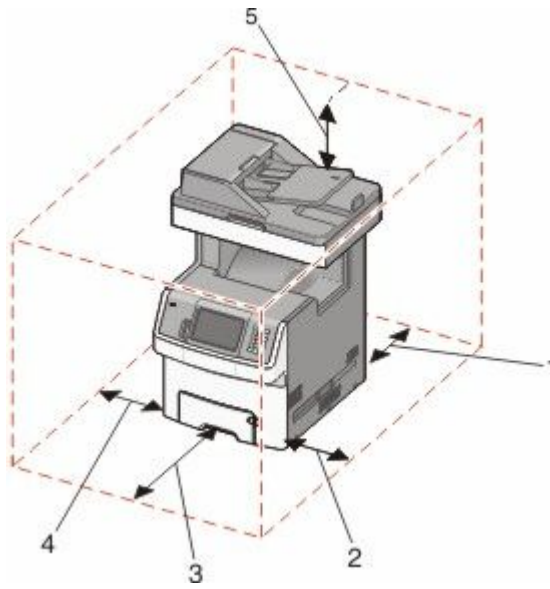
1	100 mm (3.9 in.)
2	100 mm (3.9 in.)
3	482.6 mm (19 in.)
4	100 mm (3.9 in.)
5	393.7 mm (15.5 in.)

Printer configurations

Basic model
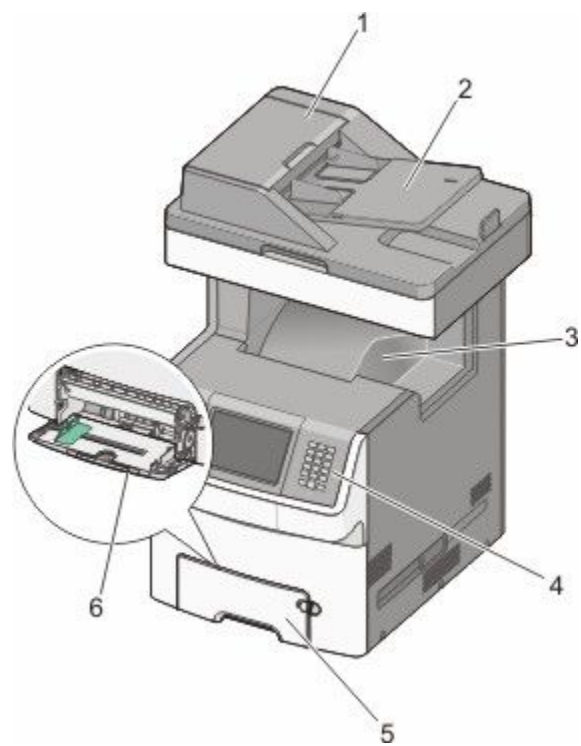
1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
2	ADF input tray
3	Standard exit bin
4	Printer control panel
5	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)
6	Multipurpose feeder

Configured model
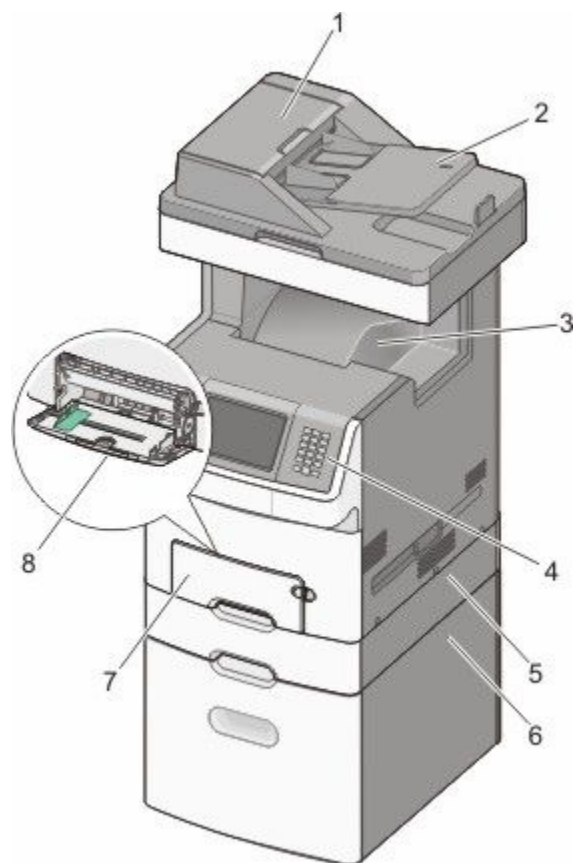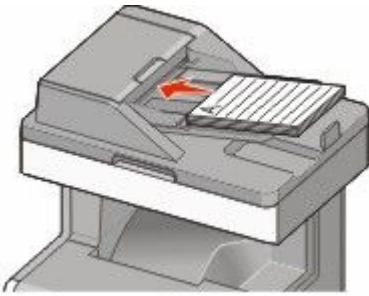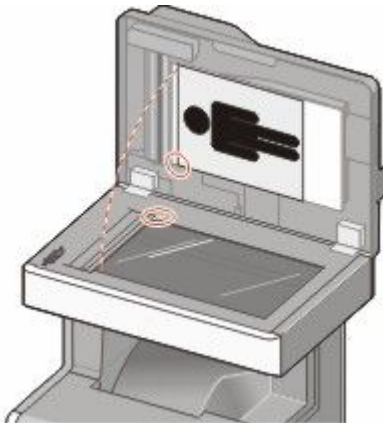
1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
2	ADF input tray
3	Standard exit bin
4	Printer control panel
5	Optional 550-sheet tray or specialty media drawer
6	Optional 2,000-sheet tray
7	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)
8	Multipurpose feeder

Basic functions of the scanner

The scanner provides copy, fax, and scan-to-network capability for large workgroups. You can:

- Make quick copies, or change the settings on the printer control panel to perform specific copy jobs.
- Send a fax using the printer control panel.
- Send a fax to multiple fax destinations at the same time.
- Scan documents and send them to your computer, an e-mail address, a flash drive, or an FTP destination.
- Scan documents and send them to another printer (PDF by way of FTP).

Understanding the ADF and scanner glass

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

You can use the ADF or the scanner glass to scan documents.

Using the ADF

The Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) can scan multiple pages, including duplex pages. When using the ADF:

- Load the document into the ADF faceup, short edge first.
- Load up to 50 sheets of plain paper in the ADF input tray.
- Scan sizes from 148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).
- Scan documents with mixed page sizes (letter and legal).
- Scan media weights from 52 to 120 g/m^2 (14 to 32 lb).
- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

Using the scanner glass

The scanner glass can be used to scan or copy single pages or book pages. When using the scanner glass:

- Place a document facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.
- Scan or copy documents up to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).
- Copy books up to 25.4 mm (1 in.) thick.

Using the security lock feature

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. When a lock compatible with most laptop computers is attached, the printer is locked. Once locked, the metal plate and the system board cannot be removed. Attach a security lock to the printer in the location shown.
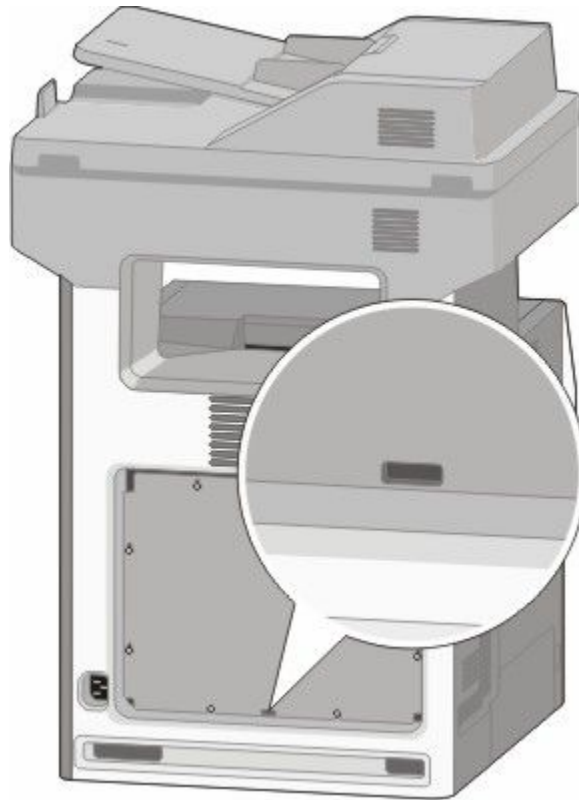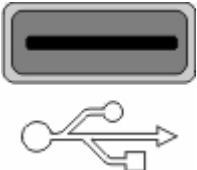
Understanding the printer control panel

Item		Description
1	Display	View scanning, copying, faxing, and printing options as well as status and error messages.
2	Keypad	Enter numbers, letters, or symbols on the display.
3	Dial Pause	• Press ▮▮ to cause a two- or three-second dial pause in a fax number. In the Fax To field, a Dial Pause is represented by a comma (,). • From the home screen, press ▮▮ to redial a fax number. • The button functions only within the Fax menu or with fax functions. When outside of the Fax menu, fax function, or home screen, pressing ▮▮ causes an error beep.
4	Back	In the Copy menu, press ← to delete the right-most digit of the value in the Copy Count. The default value of 1 appears if the entire number is deleted by pressing ← numerous times. In the Fax Destination List, press ← to delete the right-most digit of a number entered manually. You can also press ← to delete an entire shortcut entry. Once an entire line is deleted, another press of ← causes the cursor to move up one line. In the E-mail Destination List, press ← to delete the character to the left of the cursor. If the character is in a shortcut, then the shortcut is deleted.
5	Home	Press ⌂ to return to the home screen.

Item		Description
6	Start	• Press ◇ to initiate the current job indicated on the display. • From the home screen, press ◇ to start a copy job with the default settings. • If pressed while a job is scanning, the button has no effect.
7	Indicator light	• **Off**—The power is off. • **Blinking green**—The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing. • **Solid green**—The printer is on, but idle. • **Blinking red**—Operator intervention is needed.
8	Stop	Stops all printer activity A list of options is offered once `Stopped` appears on the display.
9	Front USB port	• Insert a USB flash drive to send data to the printer. • Insert a USB cable from a digital camera to print photos with a PictBridge–enabled digital camera.

Understanding the home screen

After the printer is turned on and a short warm-up period occurs, the display shows the following basic screen which is referred to as the home screen. Use the home screen buttons to initiate an action such as copying, faxing, or scanning; to open the menu screen; or to respond to messages.
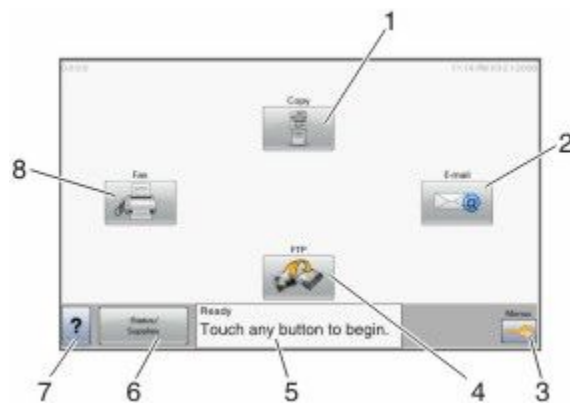
Display item		Description
1	Copy	Opens the Copy menus **Note:** From the home screen, you can also access the Copy menus by pressing a number on the keypad.
2	E-mail	Opens the E-mail menus
3	Menus	Opens the menus. These menus are available only when the printer is in the `Ready` state.

Display item		Description
4	FTP	Opens the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) menus
		Note: This function must be set up by your system support person. Once it is set up, it appears as a display item.
5	Status message bar	• Shows the current printer status such as `Ready` or `Busy`.
		• Shows printer conditions such as `Toner Low`.
		• Shows intervention messages to give instructions on what you should do so the printer can continue processing, such as `Close door` or `Insert print cartridge`.
6	Status/Supplies	Appears on the display whenever the printer status includes a message requiring intervention. Touch this button to access the messages screen for more information on the message, including how to clear it.
7		Opens a context-sensitive Help feature within the display touch screens
8	Fax	Opens the Fax menus

Other buttons that may appear on the home screen:

Display item	Function
Release Held Faxes	If this button is shown, then there are held faxes with a scheduled hold time previously set. To access the list of held faxes, touch this button.
Search Held Jobs	Searches on any of the following items and returns search results:
	• User names for held or confidential print jobs
	• Job names for held jobs, excluding confidential print jobs
	• Profile names
	• Bookmark container or job names
	• USB container or job names for supported extensions only
Held Jobs	Opens a screen containing all the held jobs
Lock Device	This button appears on the screen when the printer is unlocked and Device Lockout Personal Identification Number (PIN) has been set.
	Touching this button opens a PIN entry screen. Entering the correct PIN locks the printer control panel (touch screen and hard buttons).
Unlock Device	This button appears on the screen when the printer is locked. The printer control panel buttons and shortcuts cannot be used while it appears.
	Touching this button opens a PIN entry screen. Entering the correct PIN unlocks the printer control panel (touch screen and hard buttons).

Display item	Function
Cancel Jobs	Opens the Cancel Jobs screen. The Cancel Jobs screen shows three headings: Print, Fax, and Network. The following items are available under the Print, Fax, and Network headings: • Print job • Copy job • Fax profile • FTP • E-mail send Each heading has a list of jobs shown in a column under it which can show only three jobs per screen. Each job appears as a button which you can touch to access information about the job. If more than three jobs exist in a column, then an arrow appears enabling you to scroll through the jobs.
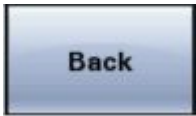
Using the touch-screen buttons

Note: Depending on your options and administrative setup, your screens and buttons may vary from those shown.

Sample touch screen

Button	Function
Home 	Returns to the home screen
Scroll down 	Opens a drop-down list

Button	Function
Left scroll decrease	Scrolls to another value in decreasing order
Right scroll increase	Scrolls to another value in increasing order
Left arrow	Scrolls left
Right arrow	Scrolls right
Submit	Saves a value as the new user default setting
Back	Navigates back to the previous screen

Other touch-screen buttons

Button	Function
Down arrow	Moves down to the next screen
Up arrow	Moves up to the next screen
Unselected radio button	This is an unselected radio button. The radio button is gray to show it is unselected.

Button	Function
Selected radio button	This is a selected radio button. The radio button is blue to show it is selected.
Cancel Jobs	Opens the Cancel Jobs screen. The Cancel Jobs screen shows three headings: Print, Fax, and Network. The following items are available under the Print, Fax, and Network headings: • Print job • Copy job • Fax profile • FTP • E-mail send Each heading has a list of jobs shown in a column under it which can show only three jobs per screen. Each job appears as a button which you can touch to access information about the job. If more than three jobs exist in a column, then an arrow appears enabling you to scroll through the jobs.
Continue	Touch this button when more changes need to be made for a job or after clearing a paper jam.
Cancel	• Cancels an action or a selection • Cancels out of a screen and returns to the previous screen
Select	Selects a menu or menu item

Features

Feature	Description
Menu trail line: Menus➜ Settings➜ Copy Settings➜ Number of Copies	A Menu trail line is located at the top of each menu screen. This feature acts as a trail, showing the path taken to arrive at the current menu. It gives the exact location within the menus. Touch any of the underlined words to return to that menu or menu item. The Number of Copies is not underlined since this is the current screen. If you touch an underlined word on the Number of Copies screen before the Number of Copies is set and saved, then the selection is not saved, and it does not become the user default setting.
Attendance message alert	If an attendance message occurs which closes a function, such as copy or fax, then an exclamation point appears over the function button on the home screen, and the red indicator light blinks.

Additional printer setup

Installing internal options

⚠️ **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are installing memory or option cards sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going to the printer.

You can customize your printer connectivity and memory capacity by adding optional cards. The instructions in this section explain how to install the available cards; you can also use them to locate a card for removal.

Available internal options

- Memory cards
  - Printer memory
  - Flash memory
  - Fonts
- Firmware cards
  - Bar Code and Forms
  - IPDS and SCS/TNe
  - PrintCryption™
  - PRESCRIBE
- Printer hard disk
- Lexmark™ Internal Solutions Ports (ISP)
  - RS-232-C Serial ISP
  - Parallel 1284-B ISP
  - MarkNet™ N8150802.11 b/g/n Wireless ISP
  - MarkNet N8130 10/100 Fiber ISP
  - MarkNet N8120 10/100/1000 Ethernet ISP
- MarkNet N8110 V-34 Fax Card

Accessing the system board to install internal options

⚠️ **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are installing memory or option cards sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going to the printer.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

1 Remove the cover.

   a Turn the screws on the cover counterclockwise to loosen them, but do not remove them.
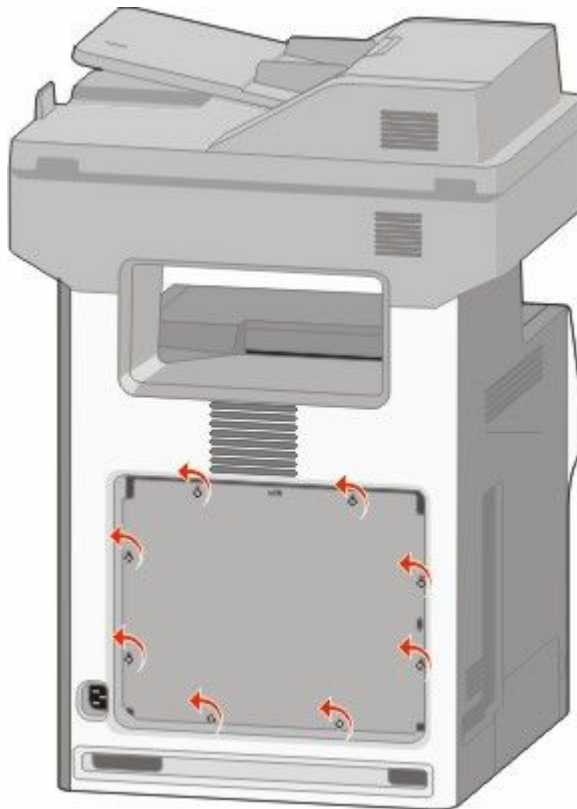
b Lift up on the tabs to align each screw with the corresponding keyhole.
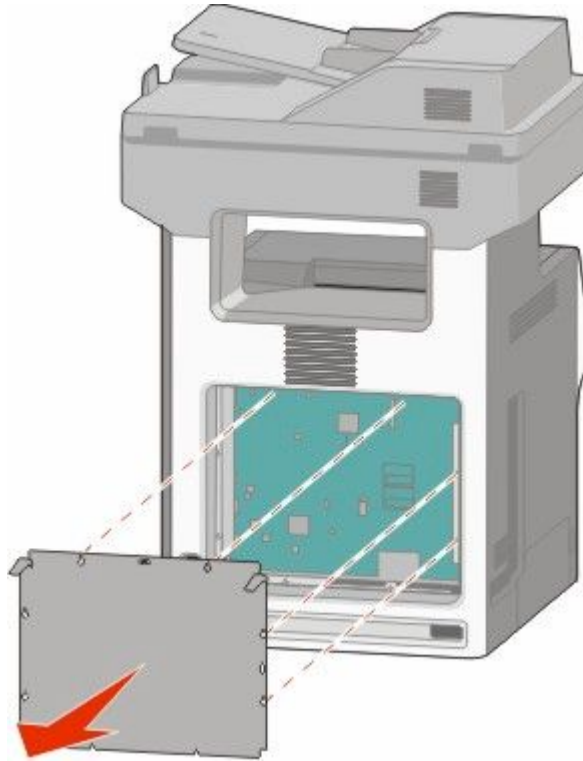
c Pull the cover forward to remove it.

2 Use the following illustration to locate the appropriate connector.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.
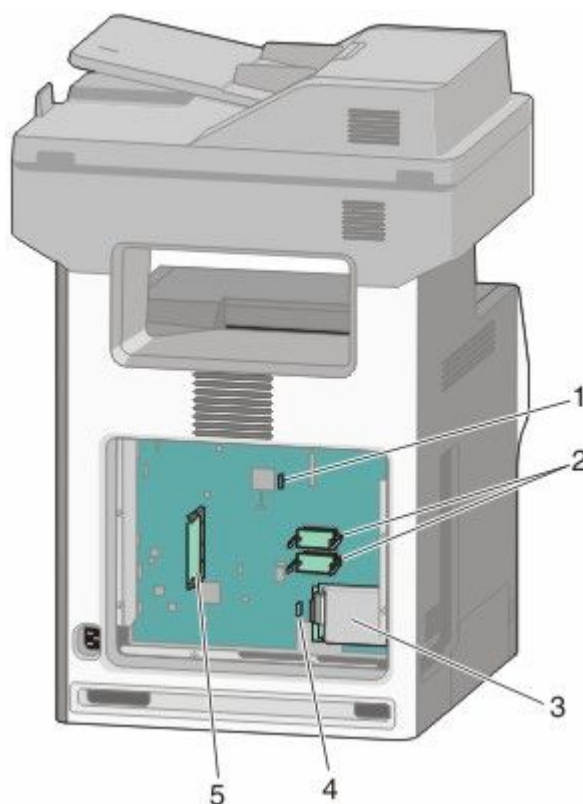
1	Fax card connector
2	Firmware and flash memory card connectors
3	Hard disk connector
4	Internal print server connector
5	Memory card connector

Installing a memory card

⚠️ **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are installing memory or option cards sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well and unplug any cables going to the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

An optional memory card can be purchased separately and attached to the system board. To install the memory card:

1 Access the system board.

> **Note:** This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

2 Unpack the memory card.

> **Note:** Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

3 Open the memory card connector latches.

4 Align the notch on the memory card with the ridge on the connector.
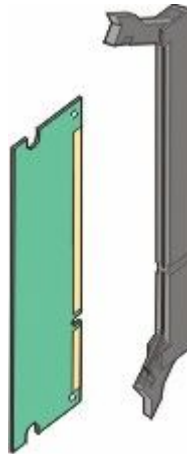
5 Push the memory card straight into the connector until it *clicks* into place.

6 Reattach the system board cover.

Additional printer setup
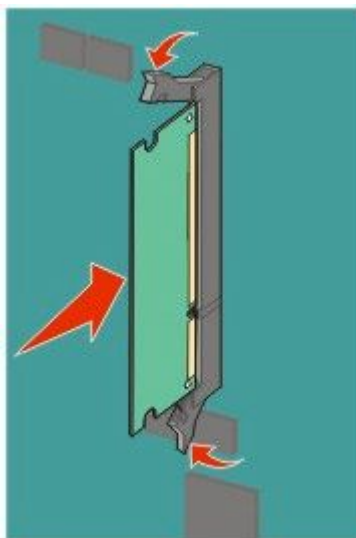
Installing a flash memory or firmware card

The system board has two connections for an optional flash memory or firmware card. Only one of each may be installed, but the connectors are interchangeable.

⚠️ **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are installing memory or option cards sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going to the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

1 Access the system board.

   Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

2 Unpack the card.

   Note: Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

3 Holding the card by its sides, align the plastic pins on the card with the holes on the system board.
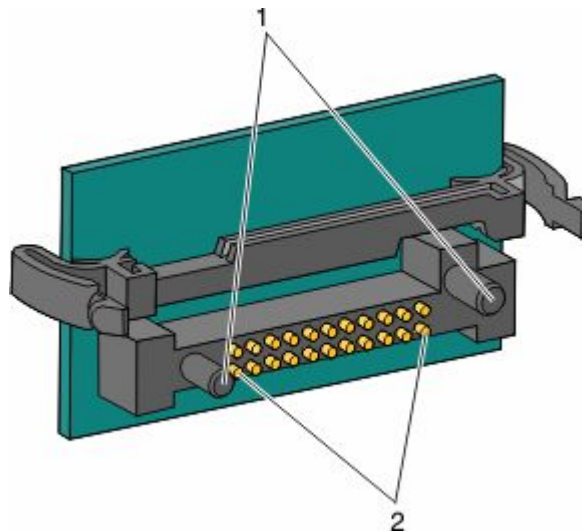
1	Plastic pins
2	Metal pins

4 Push the card firmly into place.
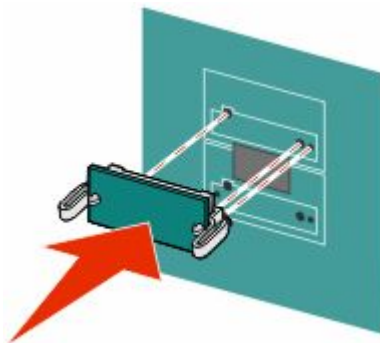
Notes:

- The entire length of the connector on the card must touch and be flush against the system board.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.

5 Reattach the system board cover.

Installing an Internal Solutions Port

The system board supports one optional Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP).

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

⚠️ **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are installing an Internal Solutions Port (ISP) after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

1 Access the system board.

2 Unpack the ISP and plastic tee.

 Note: Avoid touching the components on the card.

3 Locate the appropriate connector on the system board.
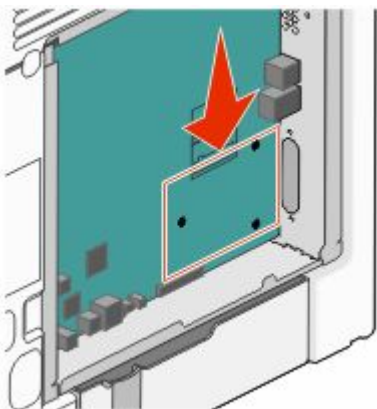
 Note: If an optional printer hard disk is currently installed, then it must first be removed. To remove the printer hard disk:

a Unplug the printer hard disk interface cable from the system board, leaving the cable attached to the printer hard disk. To unplug the cable, squeeze the paddle at the plug of the interface cable to disengage the latch before pulling the cable out.
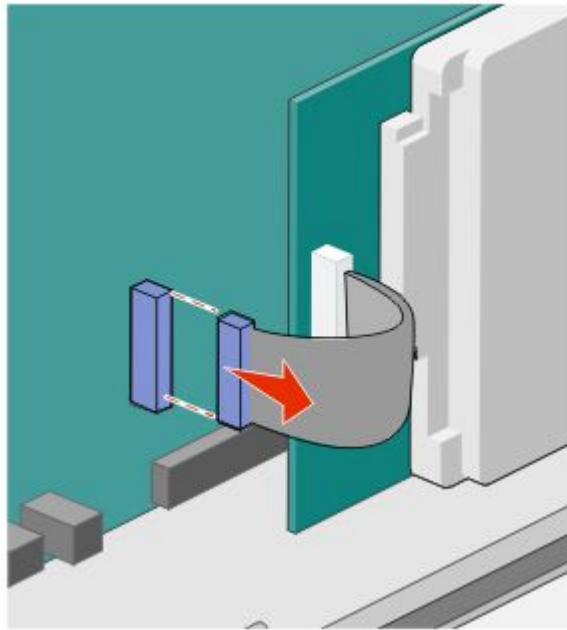
b Remove the screws holding the printer hard disk in place.
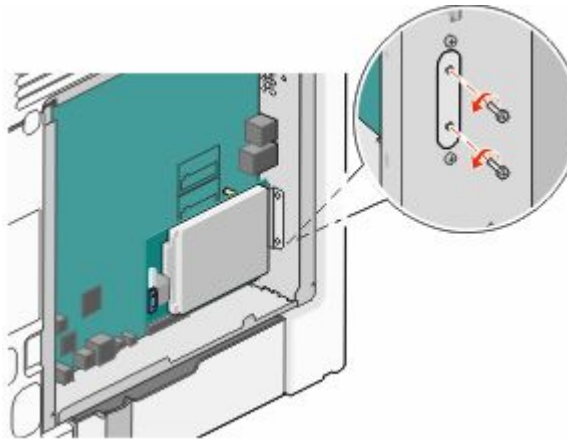
c Remove the printer hard disk by pulling it upward to unseat the standoffs.
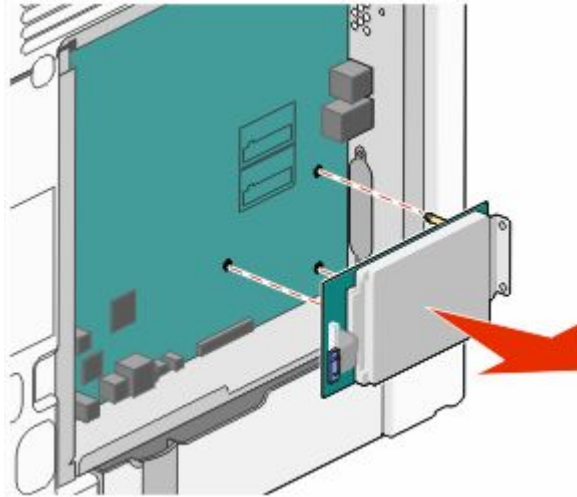
d Remove the thumbscrews that attach the printer hard disk mounting bracket to the printer hard disk, and then remove the bracket. Set the printer hard disk aside.
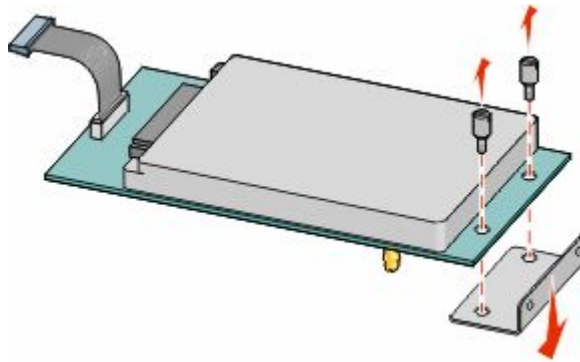
4 Remove the metal cover from the ISP opening.
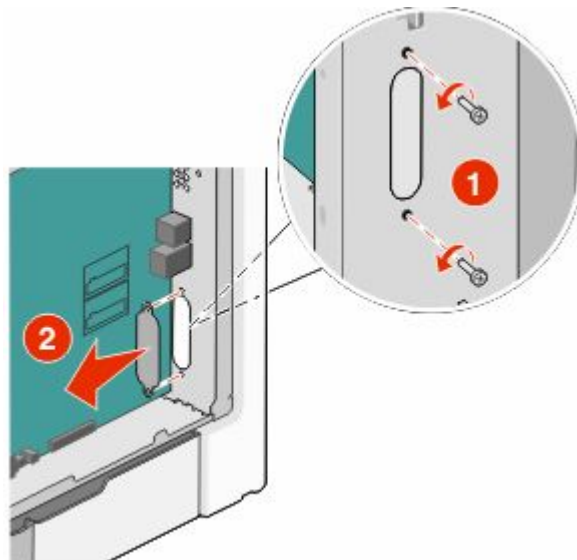
5 Align the posts of the plastic tee to the holes in the system board, and press downward until the tee *snaps* into place. Be sure each post of the tee has latched completely, and the tee is seated firmly on the system board.
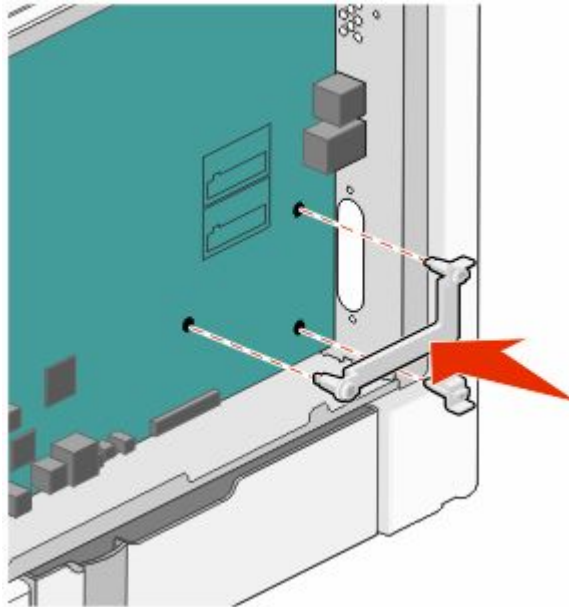
6 Install the ISP on the plastic tee. Angle the ISP over the plastic tee, and approach the plastic tee so that any overhanging connectors will pass through the ISP opening in the system board cage.
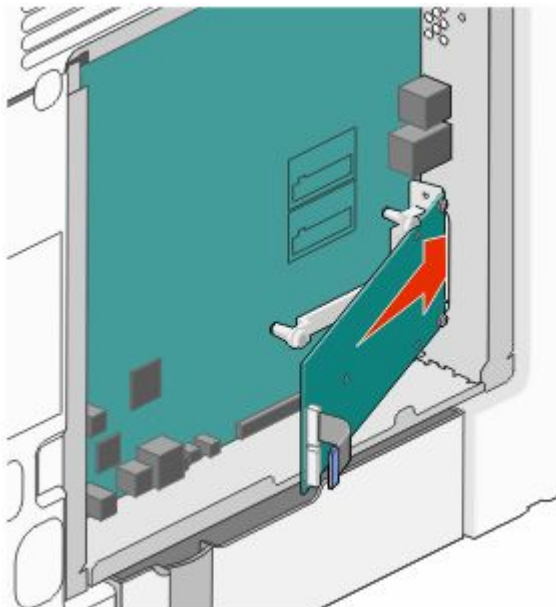
7 Lower the ISP toward the plastic tee until the ISP is seated between the guides of the plastic tee.
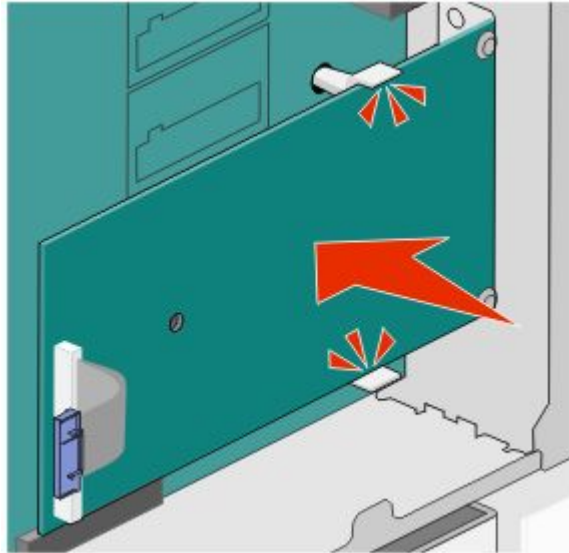
8 Insert the long thumbscrew and turn it clockwise enough to hold the ISP in place, but do not tighten the thumbscrew at this time.
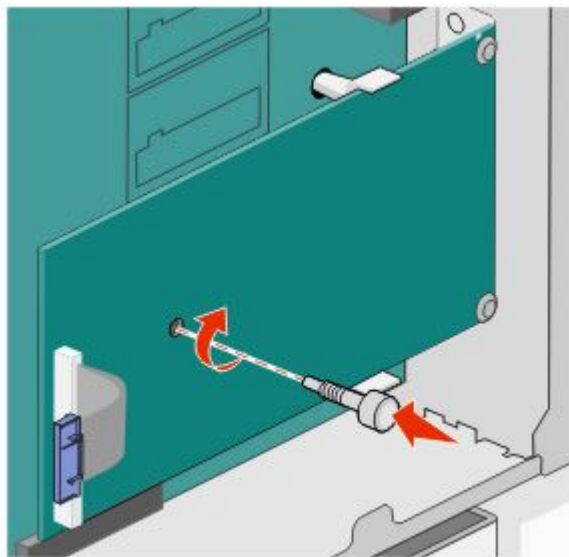
9 Attach the two provided screws to secure the ISP mounting bracket to the system board cage.
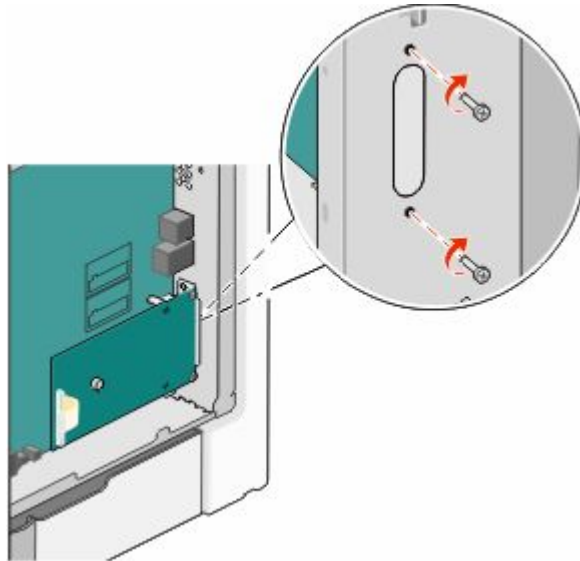
10 Tighten the long thumbscrew.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not overtighten the thumbscrew.

11 Insert the plug of the ISP interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.

Note: The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.
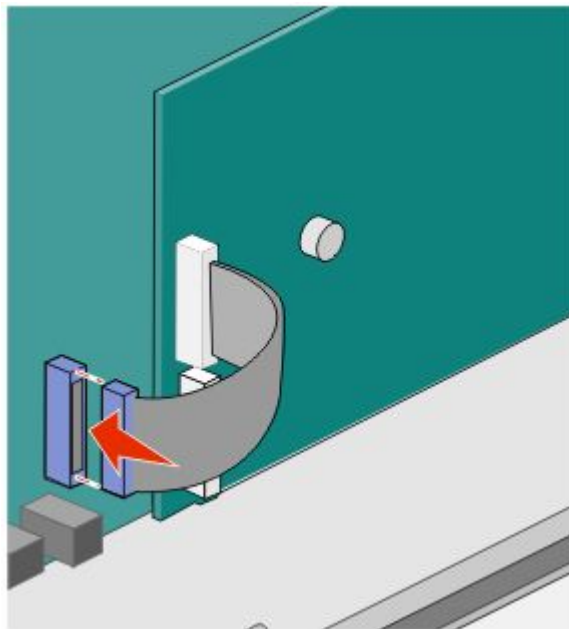
12 Reattach the system board cover.

Installing a printer hard disk

The optional printer hard disk can be installed with or without a Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP).

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

⚠ **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are installing an Internal Solutions Port (ISP) after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

1 Access the system board.

2 Unpack the printer hard disk.

> **Note:** Avoid touching the components on the card.

3 Locate the appropriate connector on the system board.
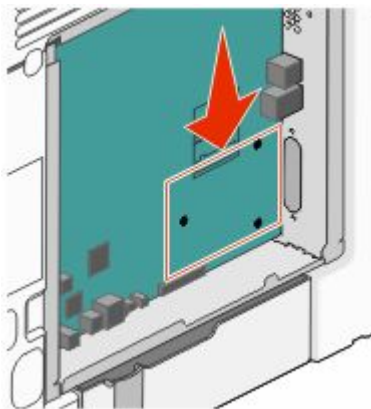
> **Note:** If an optional ISP is currently installed, then the printer hard disk must be installed onto the ISP.

To install a printer hard disk onto the ISP:

a Using a flathead screwdriver to loosen the screws, remove the thumbscrews that attach the printer hard disk mounting bracket to the printer hard disk, and then remove the bracket.
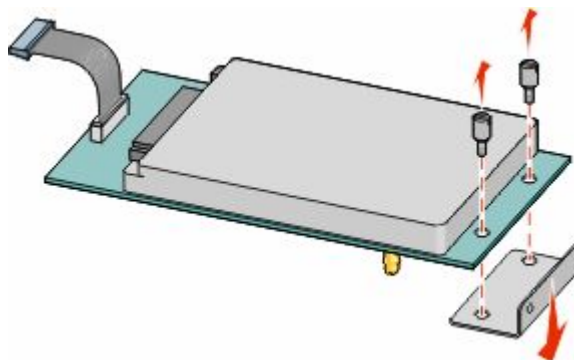
b Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk with the holes in the ISP, and then press downward on the printer hard disk until the standoffs have seated into place.
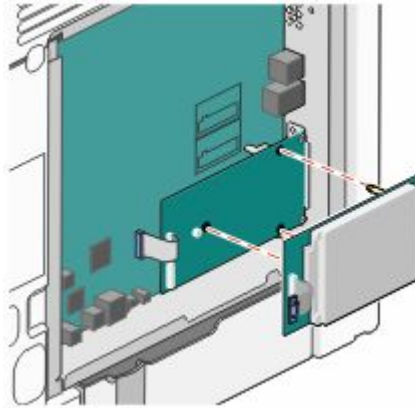
c Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the ISP.

   Note: The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.
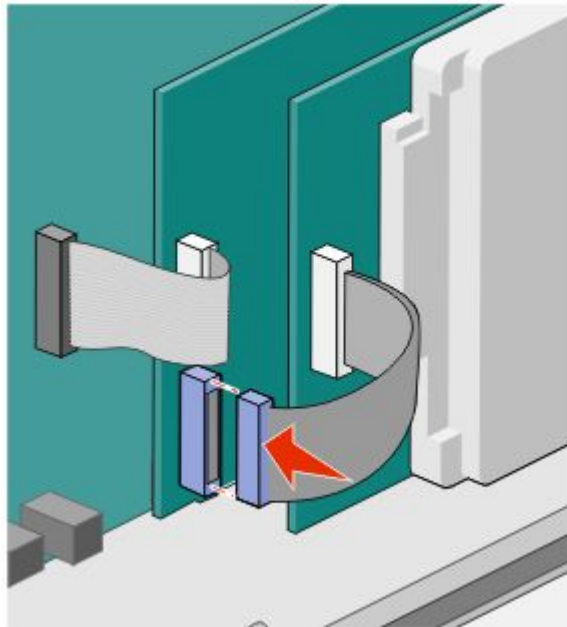
To install a printer hard disk directly on the system board:

a Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk with the holes in the system board, and then press downward on the printer hard disk until the standoffs have seated into place.
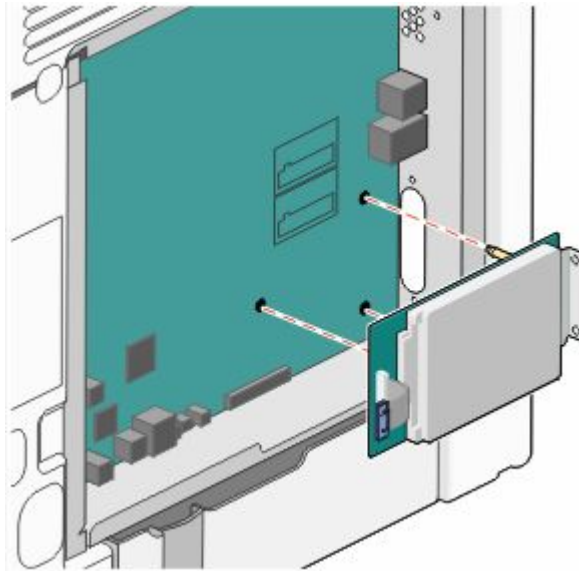
b Attach the two provided screws to secure the printer hard disk mounting bracket.
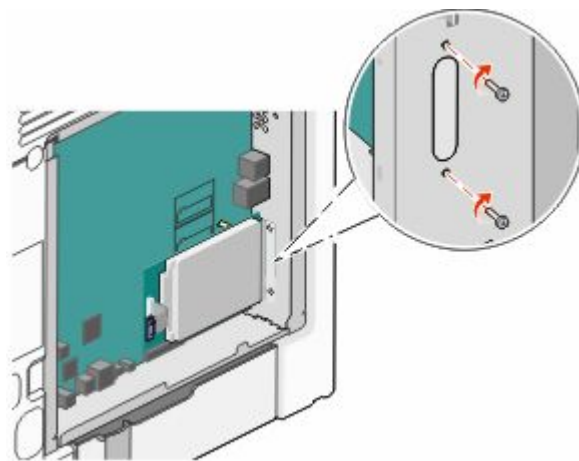
c Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.

   Note: The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.
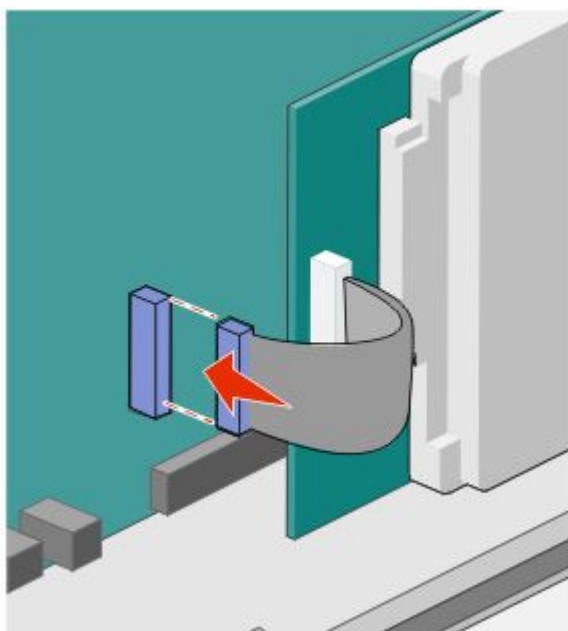
4 Reattach the system board cover.

Reattaching the system board cover

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

1 Align the eight keyholes with the screws to replace the cover.
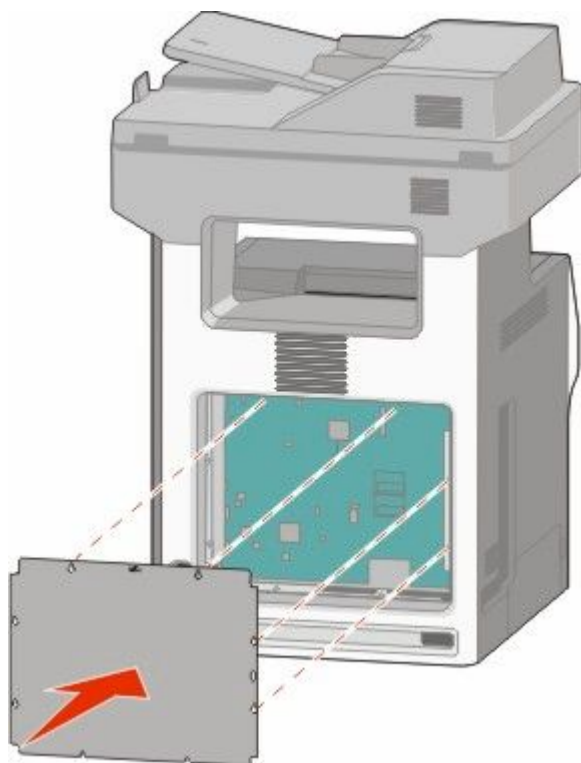
2 Slide the cover down, and then turn each screw clockwise to tighten.
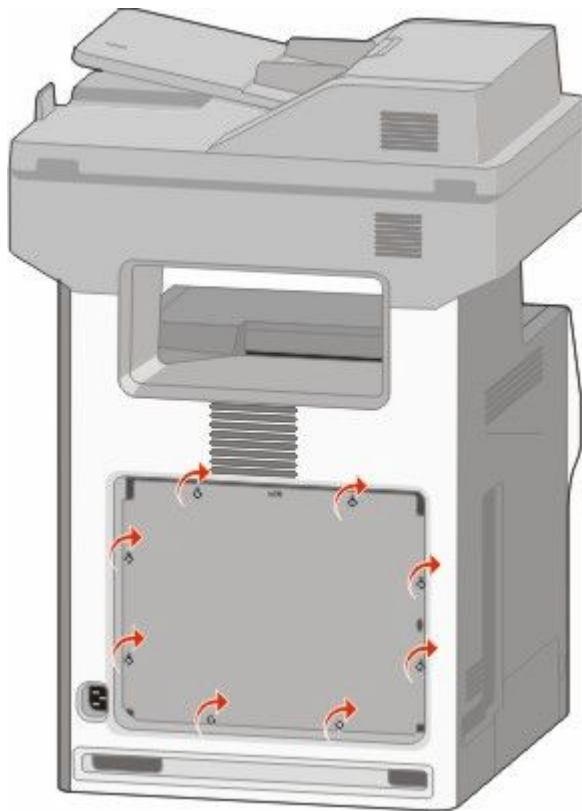
Installing optional trays

The printer supports up to four optional input sources: an optional 550-sheet tray, an optional 2,000-sheet tray, and an optional 550-sheet specialty media tray. Follow these instructions to install any of the input sources.

Note: The X734de, X736de, and X738de model printers will support a total of four optional input sources. When using a 2000-sheet tray, only one additional 550-sheet input option may be installed.

⚠️ **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

⚠️ **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are installing an optional tray after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off and unplug the power cord, the USB cable, and the Ethernet cable before continuing.

⚠️ **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.

1 Unpack the optional tray, and then remove all packing material.

Notes:

- If you are installing more than one optional tray, the 2,000-sheet tray must always be installed as the first optional tray (configuring from the bottom up).
- Optional trays lock together when stacked. Remove stacked trays one at a time from the top down.

2 Place the tray in the location chosen for the printer.
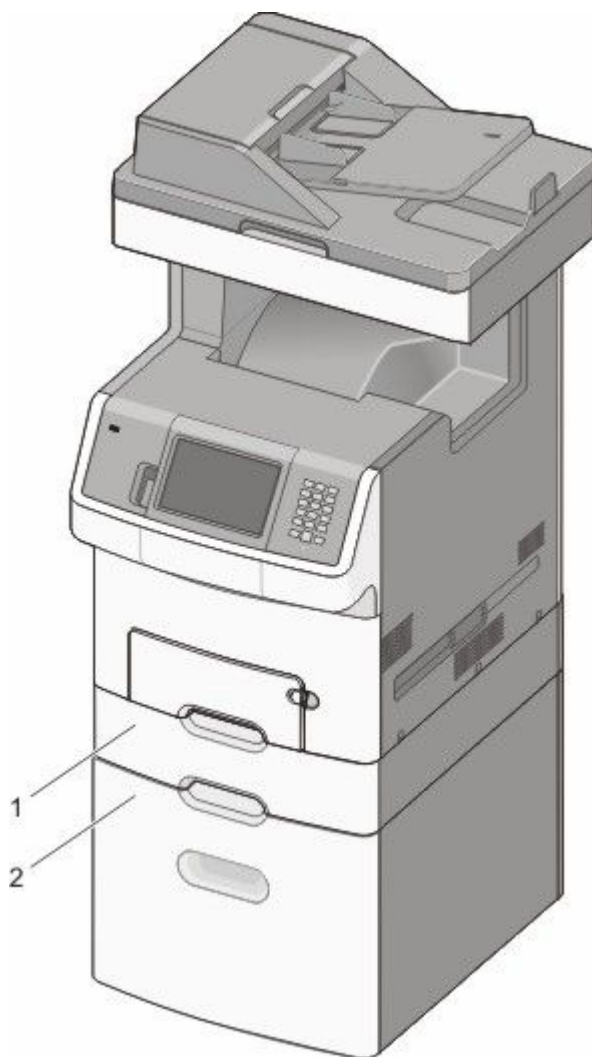
1	Optional 550-sheet tray (or optional 550-sheet specialty media drawer)
2	Optional 2,000-sheet tray

3 Align the printer with the tray, and then lower the printer into place.

Attaching cables

Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable or Ethernet cable.

1 Open the access door by pulling it out to the right.
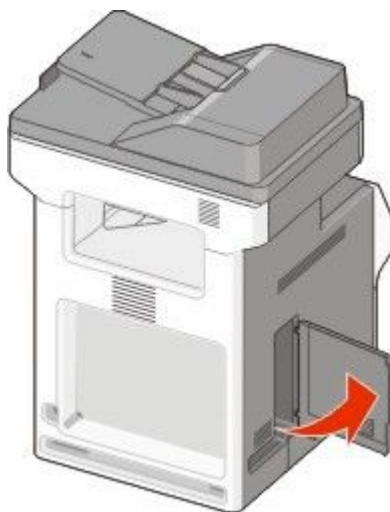
2 Match the appropriate cable to the corresponding port, as shown.
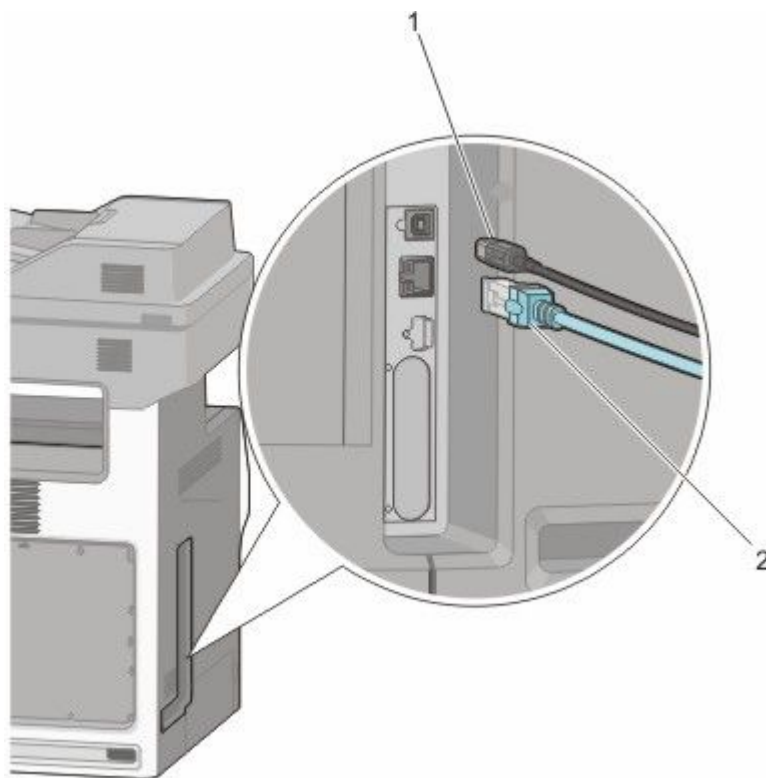
1	USB port
2	Ethernet port

3 Close the access door, being careful to neatly align the cable to the left.
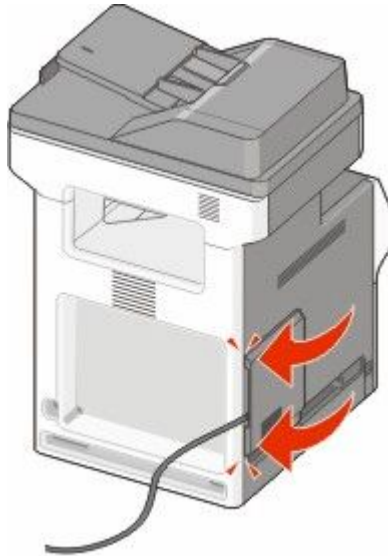
> **Note:** You may choose to completely remove the access door and store it.

Disabling fax and e-mail functions prior to setup

The indicator light blinks until you set up Fax and E-mail. To disable the blinking light, follow these steps:

Note: Before completing these instructions for a printer on a network, make sure the fax cables are connected.

1 Touch **Menus**.

2 Touch **Settings**.

3 Touch **General Settings**.

4 Touch the left or right arrow next to `Run initial setup` to select `Yes`, and then touch **Submit**.

`Submitting changes` appears.

5 Turn the printer off, and then turn the printer back on.

6 From the printer control panel, touch your language.

7 Touch your country or region, and then touch **Continue**.

8 Touch the left or right arrow to select your time zone, and then touch **Continue**.

9 Touch **Fax** and **E-mail** to deselect them, and then touch **Continue**.

Note: You can use these same steps to enable Fax and E-mail.

Verifying printer setup

Once all hardware and software options are installed and the printer is turned on, verify that the printer is set up correctly by printing the following:

- **Menu settings page**—Use this page to verify that all printer options are installed correctly. A list of installed options appears toward the bottom of the page. If an option you installed is not listed, then it is not installed correctly. Remove the option and install it again.
- **Network setup page**—If your printer is a network model and is attached to a network, print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

Printing a menu settings page

Print a menu settings page to review the current menu settings and to verify printer options are installed correctly.

Note: If you have not made any menu item settings changes yet, then the menu settings page lists all the factory default settings. Once you select and save other settings from the menus, they replace the factory default settings as *user default settings*. A user default setting remains in effect until you access the menu again, choose another value, and save it. To restore the factory default settings, see "Restoring the factory default settings" on page 251.

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch .

3 Touch **Reports**.

4 Touch **Menu Settings Page**.

The menu settings page prints and the printer returns to the home screen.

Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch .

3 Touch **Reports**.

4 Touch **Network Setup Page**.

The network setup page prints and the printer returns to the home screen.

5 Check the first section on the network setup page, and confirm that Status is "Connected."

If Status is "Not Connected," the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult a system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

Setting up the printer software

Installing printer software

A printer driver is software that lets the computer communicate with the printer. The printer software is typically installed during the initial printer setup. If you need to install the software after setup, follow these instructions:

For Windows users

1 Close all open software programs.

2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

3 From the main installation dialog, click **Install**.

4 Follow the instructions on the screen.

For Macintosh users

1 Close all open software applications.

2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

3 From the Finder desktop, double-click the printer CD icon that automatically appears.

4 Double-click the **Install** icon.

5 Follow the instructions on the screen.

Using the World Wide Web

1 Go to the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

2 From the Drivers & Downloads menu, click **Driver Finder**.

3 Select your printer, and then select your operating system.

4 Download the driver and install the printer software.

Updating available options in the printer driver

Once the printer software and any options are installed, it may be necessary to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs.

For Windows users

1 Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

2 In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.

3 Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

The printer folder opens.

4 Select the printer.

5 Right-click the printer, and then select **Properties**.

6 Click the **Install Options** tab.

7 Under Available Options, add any installed hardware options.

8 Click **Apply**.

For Macintosh users

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.

2 Click **Print & Fax**.

3 Select the printer, and then click **Options & Supplies**.

4 Click **Driver**, and then add any installed hardware options.

5 Click **OK**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier

1 From the Finder desktop, choose **Go** > **Applications**.

2 Double-click **Utilities**, and then double-click **Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.

3 Select the printer, and then from the Printers menu, choose **Show Info**.

4 From the pop-up menu, choose **Installable Options**.

5 Add any installed hardware options, and then click **Apply Changes**.

Setting up wireless printing

Follow these instructions if your printer model is wireless.

Note: A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name assigned to a wireless network. Wireless Encryption Protocol (WEP) and Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) are types of security used on a network.

Information you will need to set up the printer on a wireless network

Note: Do not connect the installation or network cables until prompted to do so by the setup software.

- **SSID**—The SSID is also referred to as the network name.
- **Wireless Mode (or Network Mode)**—The mode will be either infrastructure or ad hoc.
- **Channel (for ad hoc networks)**—The channel defaults to auto for infrastructure networks.

  Some ad hoc networks will also require the auto setting. Check with your system support person if you are not sure which channel to select.

- **Security Method**—There are three basic options for Security Method:

  - WEP key

    If your network uses more than one WEP key, enter up to four in the provided spaces. Select the key currently in use on the network by selecting the Default WEP Transmit Key.

    or

  - WPA or WPA2 passphrase

    WPA includes encryption as an additional layer of security. The choices are AES or TKIP. Encryption must be set for the same type on the router and on the printer, or the printer will not be able to communicate on the network.

  - No security

    If your wireless network does not use any type of security, then you will not have any security information.

    Note: Using an unsecured wireless network is not recommended.

If you are installing the printer on an 802.1X network using the Advanced method, then you may need the following:
- Authentication type
- Inner authentication type
- 802.1X username and password
- Certificates

Note: For more information on configuring 802.1X security, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

Installing the printer on a wireless network (Windows)

Before you install the printer on a wireless network, make sure that:
- Your wireless network is set up and working properly.
- The computer you are using is connected to the same wireless network where you want to set up the printer.

1 Connect the power cable to the printer and then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn the printer on.
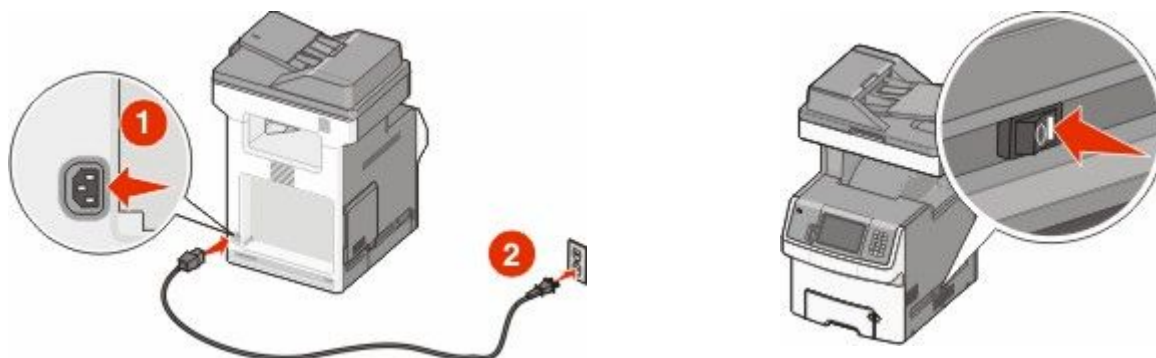
Make sure the printer and computer are fully on and ready.

 Do not connect the USB cable until instructed to do so on the screen.

2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

3 Click **Install Printer and Software**.

4 Click **Agree** to agree to the License Agreement.

5 Click **Suggested**, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Wireless Network Attach**.

7 Temporarily connect a USB cable between the computer on the wireless network and the printer.
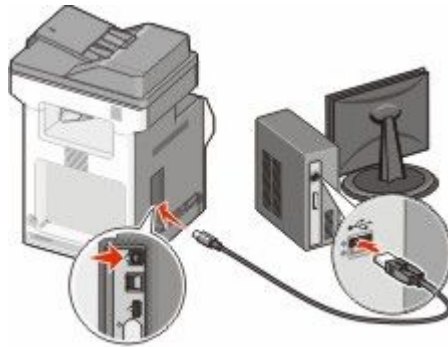
> **Note:** After the printer is configured, the software will instruct you to disconnect the temporary USB cable so you can print wirelessly.

8 Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the software installation.

> **Note:** `Basic` is the recommended path to choose. Choose `Advanced` only if you want to customize your installation.

9 To allow other computers on the wireless network to use the wireless printer, follow steps 2 through 6 and step 8 for each computer.

Installing the printer on a wireless network (Macintosh)

Prepare to configure the printer

1 Locate the printer MAC address on the sheet that shipped with the printer. Write the last six digits of the MAC address in the space provided below:

MAC address: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

2 Connect the power cable to the printer and then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn the power on.
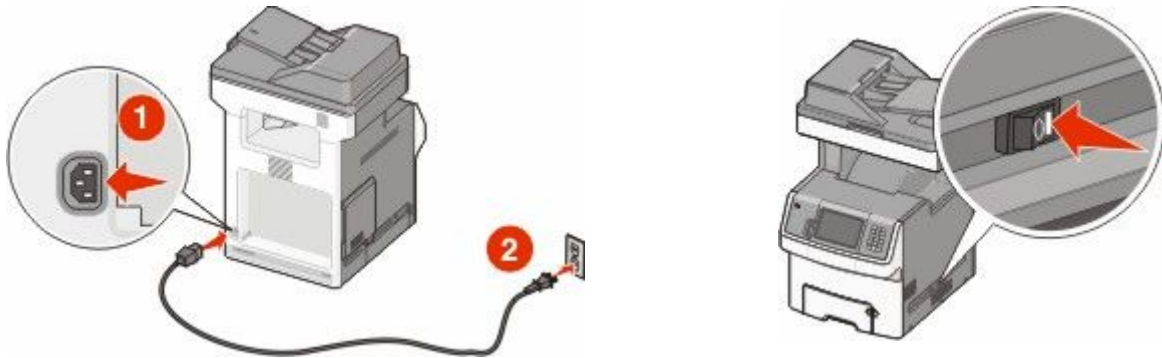
Enter the printer information

1 Access the AirPort options.

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

a From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.

b Click **Network**.

c Click **AirPort**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier

a From the Finder desktop, choose **Go** > **Applications**.

b From the Applications folder, double-click **Internet Connect**.

c From the toolbar, click **AirPort**.

2 From the Network pop-up menu, select **print server xxxxxx**, where the x's are the last six digits of the MAC address located on the MAC address sheet.

3 Open the Safari browser.

4 From the Bookmarks drop-down menu, select **Show**.

5 Under Collections, select **Bonjour** or **Rendezvous**, and then double-click the printer name.

Note: The application is referred to as Rendezvous in Mac OS X version 10.3, but is now called Bonjour by Apple Computer.

6 From the main page of the Embedded Web Server, navigate to the page where the wireless settings information is stored.

Configure the printer for wireless access

1 Type the name of your network (SSID) in the appropriate field.

2 Select **Infrastructure** as your Network Mode if you are using a wireless router.

3 Select the type of security you use to protect your wireless network.

4 Enter the security information necessary for the printer to join your wireless network.

5 Click **Submit**.

6 Open the AirPort application on your computer:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

a From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.

b Click **Network**.

c Click **AirPort**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier

a From the Finder desktop, click **Go** > **Applications**.

b From the Applications folder, double-click **Internet Connect**.

c From the toolbar, click **AirPort**.

7 From the Network pop-up menu, select your wireless network.

Configure your computer to use the printer wirelessly

To print to a network printer, each Macintosh user must install a custom *PostScript Printer Description* (PPD) file and create a printer in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.

1 Install a PPD file on the computer:

a Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD in the CD or DVD drive.

b Double-click the installer package for the printer.

c From the Welcome screen, click **Continue**.

d Click **Continue** again after viewing the Readme file.

e Click **Continue** after viewing the license agreement, and then click **Agree** to accept the terms of the agreement.

f Select a Destination, and then click **Continue**.

g From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.

h Type the user password, and then click **OK**.
All necessary software is installed on the computer.

i Click **Restart** when installation is complete.

2 Add the printer:

a For IP printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.

2 Click **Print & Fax**.

3 Click **+**.

4 Click **IP**.

5 Type in the IP address of your printer in the Address field.

6 Click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier

1 From the Finder desktop, choose **Go** > **Applications**.

2 Double-click the **Utilities** folder.

3 Locate and double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.

4 From the Printer List, choose **Add**.

5 Click **IP**.

6 Type in the IP address of your printer in the Address field.

7 Click **Add**.

b For AppleTalk printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5

1 From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.

2 Click **Print & Fax**.

3 Click **+**.

4 Click **AppleTalk**.

5 Select the printer from the list.

6 Click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4

1 From the Finder desktop, choose **Go** > **Applications**.

2 Double-click the **Utilities** folder.

3 Locate and double-click **Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.

4 From the Printer List, choose **Add**.

5 Choose the **Default Browser** tab.

6 Click **More Printers**.

7 From the first pop-up menu, choose **AppleTalk**.

8 From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk zone**.

9 Select the printer from the list.

10 Click **Add**.

Installing the printer on a wired network

Use the following instructions to install the printer on a wired network. These instructions apply to Ethernet and fiber optic network connections.

Before you install the printer on a wired network, make sure that:

- You have completed the initial setup of the printer.
- The printer is connected to your network with the appropriate type of cable.

For Windows users

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

Wait for the Welcome screen to appear.

If the CD does not launch after a minute, then do the following:

  a Click ![Start icon], or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

  b In the Start Search or Run box, type `D:\setup.exe`, where `D` is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

2 Click **Install Printer and Software**.

3 Click **Agree** to agree to the License Agreement.

4 Select **Suggested**, and then click **Next**.

> **Note:** To configure the printer using a static IP address, using IPv6, or to configure printers using scripts, select **Custom** and follow the on-screen instructions.

5 Select **Wired Network Attach**, and then click **Next**.

6 Select the printer manufacturer from the list.

7 Select the printer model from the list, and then click **Next**.

8 Select the printer from the list of printers discovered on the network, and then click **Finish**.

> **Note:** If your configured printer does not appear in the list of discovered printers, click **Add Port** and follow the on-screen instructions.

9 Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation.

For Macintosh users

1 Allow the network DHCP server to assign an IP address to the printer.

2 Print the network setup page from the printer. For information on printing a network setup page, see "Printing a network setup page" on page 43.

3 Locate the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section of the network setup page. You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

4 Install the drivers and add the printer.

  a Install a PPD file on the computer:

    1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD in the CD or DVD drive.

    2 Double-click the installer package for the printer.

    3 From the Welcome screen, click **Continue**.

    4 Click **Continue** again after viewing the Readme file.

    5 Click **Continue** after viewing the license agreement, and then click **Agree** to accept the terms of the agreement.

    6 Select a Destination, and then click **Continue**.

    7 From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.

    8 Type the user password, and then click **OK**.
      All the necessary software is installed on the computer.

    9 Click **Restart** when installation is complete.

b Add the printer:

- For IP printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.
2 Click **Print & Fax**.
3 Click +.
4 Click **IP**.
5 Type in the IP address of your printer in the Address field.
6 Click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier

1 From the Finder desktop, choose **Go** > **Applications**.
2 Double-click **Utilities**.
3 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
4 From the Printer List, click **Add**.
5 Click **IP**.
6 Type in the IP address of your printer in the Address field.
7 Click **Add**.

- For AppleTalk printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5

1 From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.
2 Click **Print & Fax**.
3 Click +.
4 Click **AppleTalk**.
5 Select the printer from the list.
6 Click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier

1 From the Finder desktop, choose **Go** > **Applications**.
2 Double-click **Utilities**.
3 Double-click **Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.
4 From the Printer List, click **Add**.
5 Choose the **Default Browser** tab.
6 Click **More Printers**.
7 From the first pop-up menu, choose **AppleTalk**.
8 From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk zone**.
9 Select the printer from the list.
10 Click **Add**.

Note: If the printer doesn't show up in the list, you may need to add it using the IP address. Contact your system support person for assistance.

Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port

When a new network Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP) is installed in the printer, the printer configurations on computers that access the printer must be updated because the printer will be assigned a new IP address. All computers that access the printer must be updated with this new IP address in order to print to it over the network.

Notes:

- If the printer has a static IP address that will stay the same, then you do not need to make any changes to the computer configurations.
- If the computers are configured to print to the printer by a network name that will stay the same, instead of by IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to the computer configurations.
- If you are adding a wireless ISP to a printer previously configured for a wired connection, then make sure the wired network is disconnected when you configure the printer to operate wirelessly. If the wired connection remains connected, then the wireless configuration will complete, but the wireless ISP will not be active. In the event that the printer was configured for a wireless ISP while still attached to a wired connection, disconnect the wired connection, turn the printer off, and then turn the printer back on again. This will enable the wireless ISP.
- Only one network connection at a time is active. If you want to switch the connection type between wired and wireless, you must first turn the printer off, connect the cable (to switch to a wired connection) or disconnect the cable (to switch to a wireless connection), and then turn the printer back on again.

For Windows users

1 Print a network setup page and make a note of the new IP address.

2 Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

3 In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.

4 Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

The printer folder opens.

5 Locate the printer that has changed.

Note: If there is more than one copy of the printer, then update all of them with the new IP address.

6 Right-click the printer.

7 Click **Properties**.

8 Click the **Ports** tab.

9 Locate the port in the list, and then select it.

10 Click **Configure Port**.

11 Type the new IP address in the "Printer Name or IP Address" field. You can find the new IP address on the network setup page you printed in step 1.

12 Click **OK**, and then click **Close**.

For Macintosh users

1 Print a network setup page and make a note of the new IP address.

2 Locate the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section of the network setup page. You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

3 Add the printer:

- For IP printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

    a From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.
    b Click **Print & Fax**.
    c Click +.
    d Click **IP**.
    e Type in the IP address of your printer in the Address field.
    f Click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier

    a From the Go menu, choose **Applications**.
    b Double-click **Utilities**.
    c Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
    d From the Printer List, click **Add**.
    e Click **IP**.
    f Type in the IP address of your printer in the Address field.
    g Click **Add**.

- For AppleTalk printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5

    a From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.
    b Click **Print & Fax**.
    c Click +.
    d Click **AppleTalk**.
    e Select the printer from the list.
    f Click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier

    a From the Go menu, choose **Applications**.
    b Double-click **Utilities**.
    c Double-click **Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.
    d From the Printer List, click **Add**.
    e Choose the **Default Browser** tab.
    f Click **More Printers**.
    g From the first pop-up menu, choose **AppleTalk**.
    h From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk zone**.

    i   Select the printer from the list.

    j   Click **Add**.

Setting up serial printing

In serial printing, data is transferred one bit at a time. Although serial printing is usually slower than parallel printing, it is the preferred option when there is a great deal of distance between the printer and computer or when an interface with a better transfer rate is not available.

After installing the serial port, you will need to configure the printer and the computer so they can communicate. Make sure you have connected the serial cable to the serial port on your printer.

1 Set the parameters in the printer:

    a   From the printer control panel, navigate to the menu with port settings.

    b   Locate the submenu with serial port settings.

    c   Make any necessary changes to the serial settings.

    d   Save the new settings.

    e   Print a menu settings page.

2 Install the printer driver:

    a   Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD. It launches automatically.

        If the CD does not launch automatically, then do the following:

        1   Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

        2   In the Start Search or Run box, type `D:\setup.exe`, where `D` is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

    b   Click **Install Printer and Software**.

    c   Click **Agree** to accept the Printer Software License Agreement.

    d   Click **Custom**.

    e   Make sure Select Components is selected, and then click **Next**.

    f   Make sure Local is selected, and then click **Next**.

    g   Select the manufacturer of the printer from the menu.

    h   Select the printer model from the menu, and then click **Add Printer**.

    i   Click the **+** beside the printer model under Select Components.

    j   Make sure the correct port is available under Select Components. This is the port where the serial cable attaches to the computer. If the correct port is not available, select the port under the Select Port menu, and then click **Add Port**.

    k   Make any configuration changes necessary in the Add a New Port window. Click **Add Port** to finish adding the port.

    l   Make sure the box next to the selected printer model is checked.

    m   Select any other optional software you want to install, and then click **Next**.

    n   Click **Finish** to complete the printer software installation.

3 Set the COM port parameters:

After the printer driver is installed, you must set the serial parameters in the communications (COM) port assigned to the printer driver.

The serial parameters in the COM port must match the serial parameters you set in the printer.

a Open the Device Manager.

    1 Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

    2 In the Start Search or Run box, type `devmgmt.msc`.

    3 Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

       The Device Manager opens.

b Click **+** to expand the list of available ports.

c Select the communications port where you attached the serial cable to your computer (example: COM1).

d Click **Properties**.

e On the Port Settings tab, set the serial parameters to the same serial parameters in the printer.

    Look for the printer settings under the serial heading on the Menu Settings page you printed earlier.

f Click **OK**, and then close all the windows.

g Print a test page to verify printer installation. When a test page prints successfully, printer setup is complete.

Minimizing your printer's environmental impact

Lexmark is committed to environmental sustainability and is continually improving its printers to reduce their impact on the environment. We design with the environment in mind, engineer our packaging to reduce materials, and provide collection and recycling programs. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com/environment**
- The Lexmark recycling program at **www.lexmark.com/recycle**

By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's impact even further. This chapter outlines the settings and tasks that may yield a greater environmental benefit.

Saving paper and toner

Studies show that as much as 80% of the carbon footprint of a printer is related to paper usage. You can significantly reduce your carbon footprint by using recycled paper and the following printing suggestions, such as printing on both sides of the paper and printing multiple pages on one side of a single sheet of paper.

For information on how you can quickly save paper and energy using one printer setting, see "Using Eco-Mode".

Using recycled paper

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser printers. For more information on recycled papers that work well with your printer, see "Using recycled paper and other office papers" on page 76.

Conserving supplies

There are a number of ways you can reduce the amount of paper and toner you use when printing, copying, or receiving faxes. You can:

Use both sides of the paper

If your printer model supports duplex printing, you can control whether print appears on one or two sides of the paper for a printed document by selecting **2-sided printing** from the Print dialog or the Lexmark Toolbar.

Place multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print up to 16 consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto one side of a single sheet of paper by selecting a setting from the Multipage printing (N-Up) section of the Print dialog screen.

Choose scanning

You can avoid making a paper output of a document or photograph by scanning it and then saving it to a computer program, application, or flash drive. For more information, see:

- "Sending an e-mail using the touch screen" on page 105
- "Scanning to a computer" on page 137

- "Scanning to a flash drive" on page 138

Check your first draft for accuracy

Before printing or making multiple copies of a document:

- Use the Lexmark preview feature, which you can select from the Print dialog, the Lexmark Toolbar, or the printer display, to see what the document will look like before you print it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

Avoid paper jams

Carefully select and load paper to avoid paper jams. For more information, see "Avoiding jams" on page 262.

Print in black and white

To print all text and graphics using only the black toner cartridge, set the printer to Black Only. For more information, see "Printing in black and white" on page 87.

Use Max Speed or Max Yield settings

The Max Speed and Max Yield settings let you choose between a faster print speed or a higher toner yield. Max Yield is the factory default setting. For more information, see "Using Max Speed and Max Yield" on page 88.

Saving energy

Using Eco-Mode

Use Eco-Mode to quickly select one or more ways to reduce your printer's environmental impact.

Note: See the table for the multiple settings that change when you select an Eco-Mode setting.

Choose	To
Energy	Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle. • Printer engine motors do not start until a job is ready to print. You may notice a short delay before the first page is printed. • The printer enters Power Saver mode after one minute of inactivity. • When the printer enters Power Saver mode, the printer control panel display and the standard exit bin lights are turned off. • The scanner lamps are activated only when a scan job is started.
Paper	• Enable the automatic duplex feature. • Turn off print log features.
Energy/Paper	Use all the settings associated with Energy mode and Paper mode.
Off	Use factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode. This setting supports the performance specifications for your printer.

To select an Eco-Mode setting:

1 On the home screen, touch .

2 Touch **Settings**.

3 Touch **General Settings**.

4 Touch **Eco-Mode**.

5 Touch the arrows to select a setting.

6 Touch **Submit**.

`Submitting changes` appears.

Reducing printer noise

Use Quiet Mode to reduce the printer noise.

Note: See the table for the multiple settings that change when you select a Quiet Mode setting.

Choose	To
On (Text/Graphics) **Note:** This setting is best suited for printing text and line graphics.	Reduce printer noise. • Print jobs will process at one-half the normal processing speed. • Printer engine motors do not start until a job is ready to print. There will be a short delay before the first page is printed. • Fans run at reduced speed or are turned off. • If your printer has faxing capability, fax sounds are reduced or disabled, including those made by the fax speaker and ringer. The fax is placed in standby mode. • The alarm control and cartridge alarm sounds are turned off. • The printer will ignore the Advance Start command.
Off (Image/Photo) **Note:** Selecting **Photo** from the driver may disable Quiet Mode and provide better print quality and full speed printing.	Use factory default settings. This setting supports the performance specifications for your printer.

To select a Quiet Mode setting:

1 On the home screen, touch 　.

2 Touch **Settings**.

3 Touch **General Settings**.

4 Touch **Quiet Mode**.

5 Touch the arrows to select a setting.

6 Touch **Submit**.

`Submitting changes` appears.

Adjusting Power Saver

To save energy, you can decrease the number of minutes before the printer enters Power Saver mode.

Available settings range from 1–240 minutes. The factory default setting is 30 minutes.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**, and then click **General Settings**.

3 Click **Timeouts**.

4 In the Power Saver box, type the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Power Saver mode.

5 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch .

3 Touch **Settings**.

4 Touch **General Settings**.

5 Touch the down arrow until `Timeouts` appears.

6 Touch **Timeouts**.

7 Touch the arrows next to `Power Saver Mode` to select the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Power Saver mode.

8 Touch **Submit**.

9 Touch .

Adjusting the brightness of the display

To save energy, or if you are having trouble reading your display, you can adjust the brightness of the display.

Available settings range from 20–100. The factory default setting is 100.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**, and then click **General Settings**.

3 In the Screen Brightness box, type in the brightness percentage you want for your home screen.

4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch ![icon].

3 Touch **Settings**.

4 Touch **General Settings**.

5 Touch the down arrow until `Screen Brightness` appears.

6 Touch the arrows to select a setting.

7 Touch **Submit**.

8 Touch ![icon].

Setting the standard exit bin light

To save energy, you can dim or turn off the output lighting for the standard exit bin.

Available settings are Off, Dim, and Bright.
    The factory default setting for Normal/Standby Mode is Bright.
    The factory default setting for Power Saver is Dim.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**, and then click **General Settings**.

3 Click **Output Lighting**.

4 From the Normal/Standby Mode list, select the light setting the standard exit bin will use when in Ready or Standby mode.

5 From the Power Saver list, select the light setting the standard exit bin will use when in Power Saver mode.

   Note: For more information on Power Saver mode, see "Adjusting Power Saver" on page 60.

6 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch ![icon].

3 Touch **Settings**, and then touch **General Settings**.

4 Touch the down arrow until `Output Lighting` appears.

5 Touch **Output Lighting**.

6 Touch the arrow button next to `Normal/Standby Mode` to select the light settings the standard exit bin will use when in Ready or Standby mode.

7 Touch the arrow button next to `Power Saver` to select the light setting the standard exit bin will use when in Power Saver mode.

> **Note:** For more information on Power Saver mode, see "Adjusting Power Saver" on page 60.

8 Touch **Submit**.

9 Touch .

Recycling

Lexmark provides collection programs and environmentally progressive approaches to recycling. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com/environment**
- The Lexmark recycling program at **www.lexmark.com/recycle**

Recycling Lexmark products

To return Lexmark products to Lexmark for recycling:

1 Visit our Web site at **www.lexmark.com/recycle**.

2 Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country from the list.

3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Recycling Lexmark packaging

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark will recycle the box.

Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

The Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program diverts millions of Lexmark cartridges from landfills annually by making it both easy and free for Lexmark customers to return used cartridges to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. Boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, follow the instructions that came with your printer or cartridge and use the pre-paid shipping label. You can also:

1 Visit our Web site at **www.lexmark.com/recycle**.

2 From the Toner Cartridges section, select your country from the list.

3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Loading paper and specialty media

This section explains how to load the 550-sheet trays, the 2,000-sheet tray, and the multipurpose feeder. It also includes information about paper orientation, setting the Paper Size and Paper Type, and linking and unlinking trays.

Setting the Paper Size and Paper Type

The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except the standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose tray. The Paper Size setting for the standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose tray must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The factory default Paper Type setting is Plain Paper. The Paper Type setting must be set manually for all trays that do not contain plain paper.

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch .

3 Touch **Paper Menu**.

4 Touch **Paper Size/Type**.

5 Touch the arrows for the desired tray until the correct size or type setting appears.

6 Touch **Submit**.

7 Touch to return to the home screen.

Configuring Universal paper settings

The Universal Paper Size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus. Set the Paper Size for the specified tray to Universal when the size you want is not available from the Paper Size menu. Then, specify all of the following Universal size settings for your paper:

- Units of measure (millimeters or inches)
- Portrait Width
- Portrait Height

Note: The smallest supported Universal size is 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.); the largest size is 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

Specify a unit of measurement

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch .

3 Touch **Paper Menu**.

4 Touch the down arrow until `Universal Setup` appears, and then touch **Universal Setup**.

5 Touch the left or right arrow to select the desired unit of measure.

6 Touch **Portrait Width** or **Portrait Height**.

7 Touch the arrows to select the desired width or height.

8 Touch **Submit** to save your selection.

`Submitting Selection` appears, followed by the Paper menu.

9 Touch 🏠 to return to the home screen.

Loading trays

Note: Do not remove trays while a job prints or while `Busy` appears on the display. Doing so may cause a jam.

1 Pull the tray completely out.
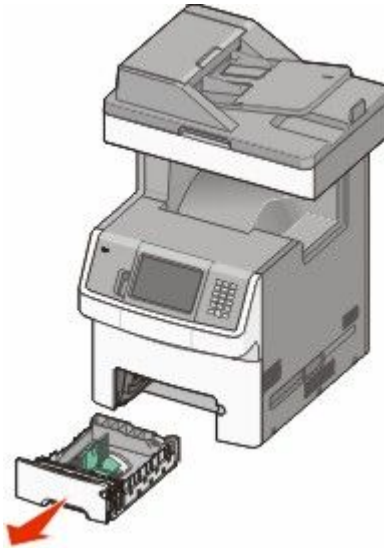
2 Squeeze and slide the width guides to the correct position for the size of paper you are loading.

Use the size indicators on the bottom of the tray to help position the guides.
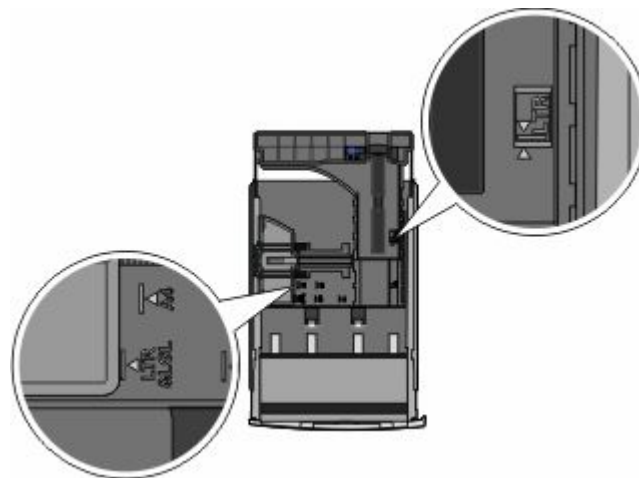
3 Squeeze and slide the length guides to the correct position for the size of paper you are loading.

> **Note:** The length guide has a locking device. To unlock the tray, slide the button on top of the length guide to the left. To lock the tray once a length has been selected, slide the button back to the right.
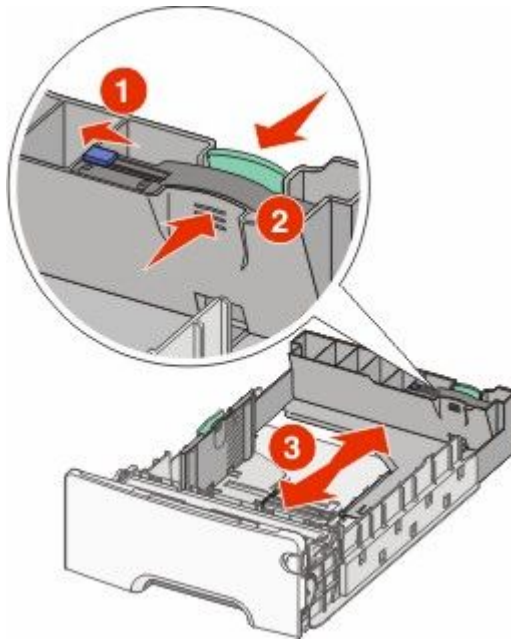
4 Flex a stack of paper back and forth to loosen the sheets, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

5 Load the paper stack toward the back of the tray with the recommended print side faceup.

The load line on the left side of the paper tray indicates the maximum height for loading paper.

When loading preprinted letterhead for simplex printing, place the header toward the front of the tray.

6 Insert the tray.
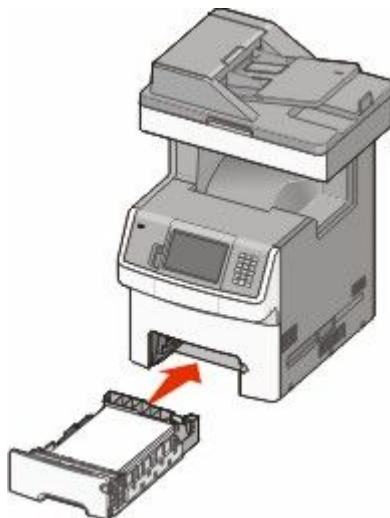
7 If the paper type you loaded differs from the type that was previously loaded in the tray, then change the Paper Type setting for the tray.

Loading the multipurpose feeder

The multipurpose feeder accommodates a variety of media types, including envelopes.
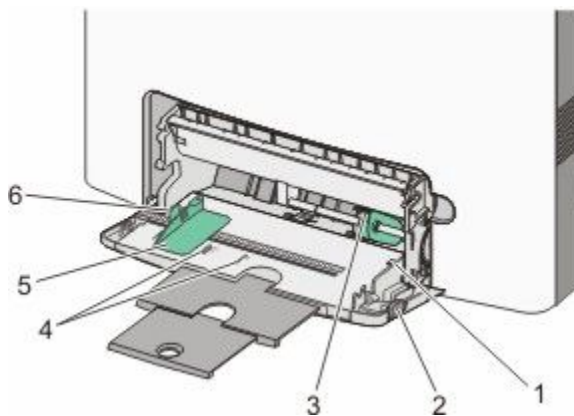
1	Stack height limiter
2	Tray release latch
3	Paper release lever
4	Size indicators
5	Width guide
6	Width guide release tab

1 Press the tray release latch to the left, and then pull the multipurpose tray down.
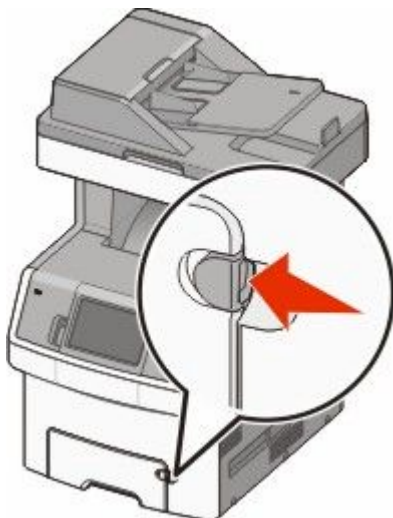
2 Gently pull the extension out until it is fully extended.
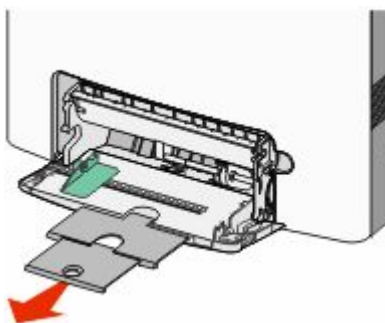
3 Flex sheets of paper or specialty media back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

Paper	
Envelopes	
* Avoid touching the print side of transparencies. Be careful not to scratch them.	

Transparencies*	
* Avoid touching the print side of transparencies. Be careful not to scratch them.	
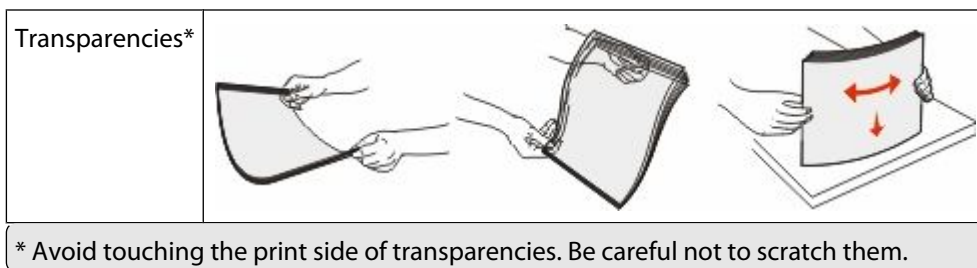
4 Load the paper or specialty media. Slide the stack into the multipurpose feeder until it comes to a stop.
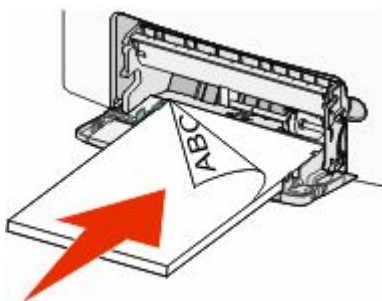
Notes:

- Do not exceed the maximum stack height by forcing paper under the stack height limiter.
- Load only one size and type of media at a time.
- Media should lie flat and fit loosely in the multipurpose tray.
- If the media is pushed too far into the multipurpose feeder, then press the paper release lever to remove it.
- Load envelopes with the flap side up and the return address edge entering the printer first.
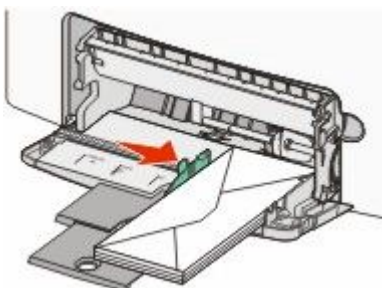
Warning—Potential Damage: Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.

5 From the printer control panel, set the Paper Size and Paper Type.

a Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

b On the home screen, touch [image].

c Touch **Paper Menu**.

d Touch **Paper Size/Type**.

e Touch the arrows for the desired tray until the correct size or type setting appears.

f Touch **Submit**.

g Touch [image] to return to the home screen.

Loading the 2000-sheet tray

1 Pull the tray out.

2 Pull up and slide the width guide to the correct position for the paper size being loaded.
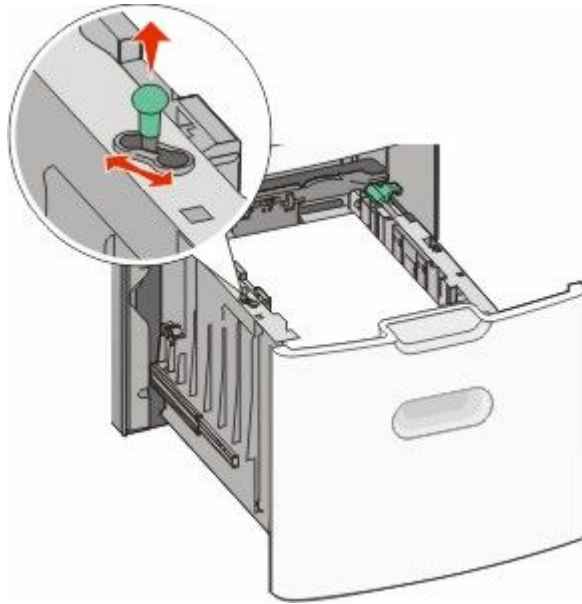
3 Unlock the length guide.
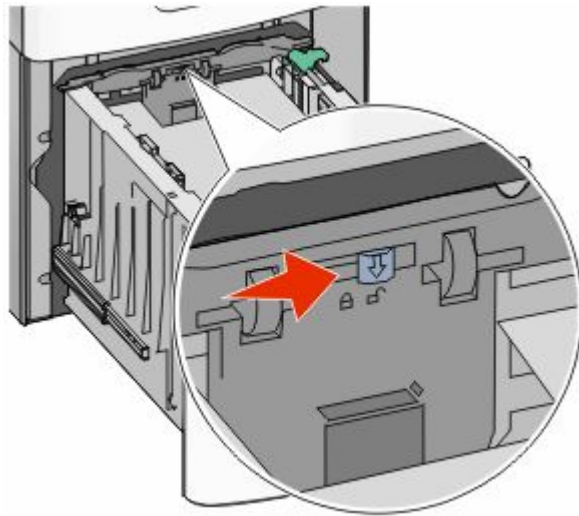
4 Push the length guide release latch to raise the length guide, slide the guide to the correct position for the paper size being loaded, and then lock the guide.
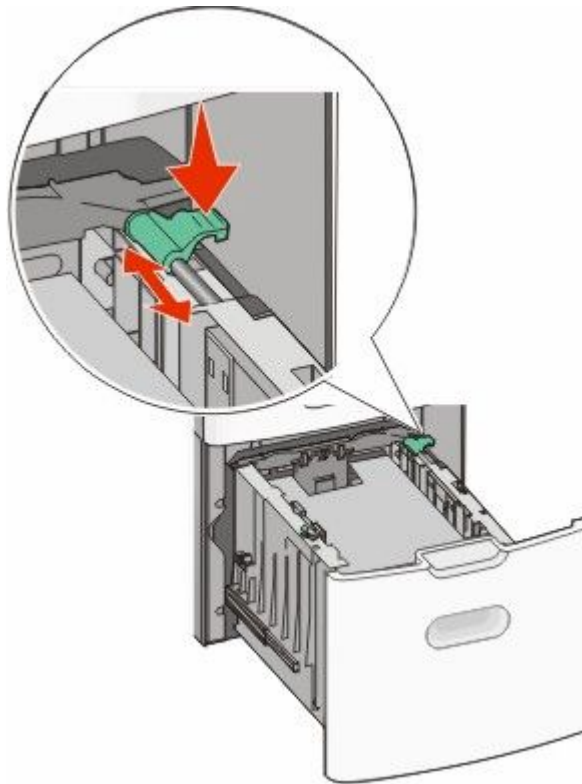
5 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

6 Load the paper stack:

- Print side faceup for single-sided printing
- Print side facedown for duplex printing

Single-sided printing	Duplex (two-sided) printing
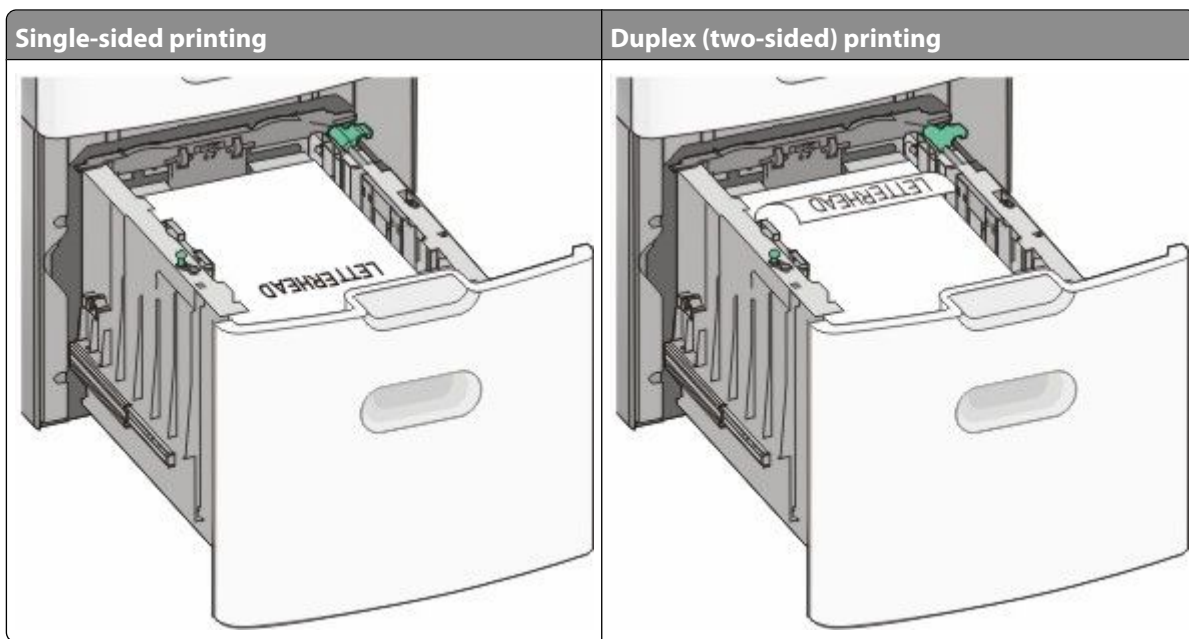
Note: Notice the maximum fill line on the side of the tray, which indicates the maximum height for loading paper. Do not overload the tray.
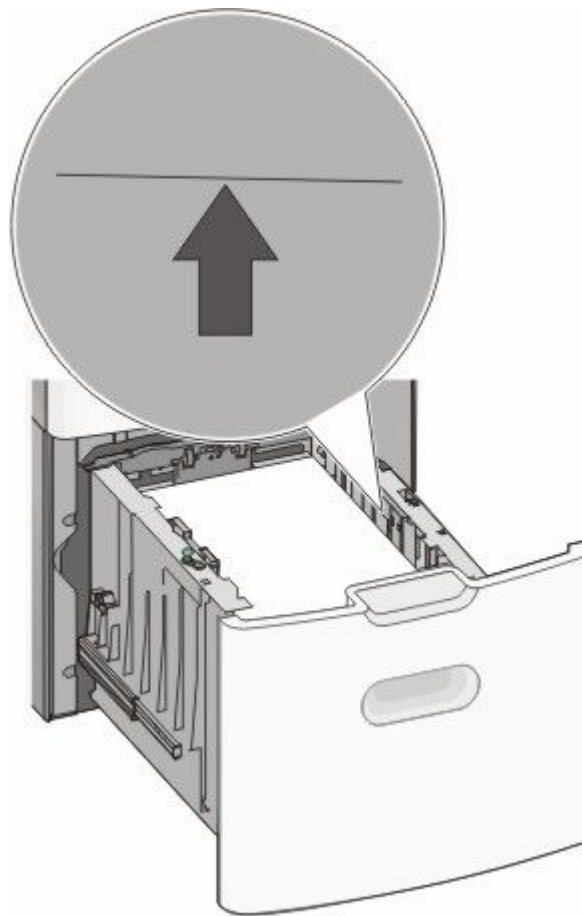
7 Insert the tray.

Linking and unlinking trays

Linking trays

Tray linking is useful for large print jobs or multiple copies. When one linked tray is empty, paper feeds from the next linked tray. When the Paper Size and Paper Type settings are the same for any trays, the trays are automatically linked. The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except the Standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose tray. The Paper Size setting for the Standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose tray must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set for all trays from the Paper Type menu. The Paper Type menu and the Paper Size menu are both available from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Unlinking trays

Unlinked trays have settings that are *not* the same as the settings of any other tray.

To unlink a tray, change the following tray settings so that they do not match the settings of any other tray:

- Paper Type (for example: Plain Paper, Letterhead, Custom Type <x>)

  Paper Type names describe the paper characteristics. If the name that best describes your paper is used by linked trays, assign a different Paper Type name to the tray, such as Custom Type <x>, or define your own custom name.

- Paper Size (for example: letter, A4, statement)

  Load a different paper size to change the Paper Size setting for a tray automatically. Paper Size settings for the Standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose tray are not automatic; they must be set manually from the Paper Size menu.

Notes:

- Do not assign a Paper Type name that does not accurately describe the type of paper loaded in the tray. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified Paper Type. Paper may not be properly processed if an inaccurate Paper Type is selected.
- If the media you have loaded is smaller than the Paper Size setting, then your text or graphics may not fit on the media.

Assigning a custom paper type name

Assign a custom paper type name to a tray when linking or unlinking the tray.

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 From the home screen, touch ![icon].

3 Touch **Paper Menu**.

4 Touch **Paper Size/Type**.

5 Touch the paper type arrows for the desired tray until the correct custom type appears.

6 Touch the tray number or **MP Feeder Type**.

7 Touch **Submit**.

Changing a Custom Type <x> name

You can use the Embedded Web Server or MarkVision™ to define a name other than Custom Type <x> for each of the custom paper types that are loaded. When a Custom Type <x> name is changed, the menus display the new name instead of Custom Type <x>.

To change a Custom Type <x> name from the Embedded Web Server:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

 Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Default Settings, click **Paper Menu**.

4 Click **Custom Names**.

5 Type a name for the paper type in a Custom Name <x> box.

 Note: This custom name will replace a custom type <x> name under the Custom Types and Paper Size/Type menus.

6 Click **Submit**.

7 Click **Custom Types**.

 `Custom Types` appears, followed by your custom name.

8 Select a Paper Type setting from the list next to your custom name.

9 Click **Submit**.

Paper and specialty media guidelines

Paper guidelines

Paper characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these characteristics when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

The printer can automatically feed paper weights from 60 to 220 g/m^2 (16 to 58 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, causing jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) grain long paper. For paper smaller than 182 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 in.), we recommend 90 g/m^2 (24 lb) or heavier paper.

Note: Duplex is supported only for 63 g/m^2–170 g/m^2 (17 lb–45 lb bond) paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and can cause feeding problems.

Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; however, smoothness between 150 and 200 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Condition paper before printing by storing it in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper.

For 60 to 135 g/m^2 (16 to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long paper is recommended. For papers heavier than 135 g/m^2, grain short is recommended.

Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

Unacceptable paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±2.3 mm (±0.9 in.), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

    In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms.
- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers
- Recycled papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European)
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb)
- Multiple-part forms or documents

Selecting paper

Using appropriate paper prevents jams and helps ensure trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams and poor print quality:

- *Always* use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- *Do not* use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- *Do not* mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same source; mixing results in jams.
- *Do not* use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

Use these guidelines when selecting preprinted forms and letterhead:

- Use grain long for 60 to 90 g/m^2 (16 to 24 lb) weight paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid papers with rough or heavily textured surfaces.

Use papers printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must be able to withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions. Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not. When in doubt, contact the paper supplier.

Preprinted papers such as letterhead must be able to withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.

Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser (electrophotographic) printers. In 1998, Lexmark presented to the US government a study demonstrating that recycled paper produced by major mills in the US fed as well as non-recycled paper. However, no blanket statement can be made that *all* recycled paper will feed well.

Lexmark consistently tests its printers with recycled paper (20–100% post-consumer waste) and a variety of test paper from around the world, using chamber tests for different temperature and humidity conditions. Lexmark has found no reason to discourage the use of today's recycled office papers, but generally the following property guidelines apply to recycled paper.

- Low moisture content (4–5%)
- Suitable smoothness (100–200 Sheffield units, or 140–350 Bendtsen units, European)

    Note: Some much smoother papers (such as premium 24 lb laser papers, 50–90 Sheffield units) and much rougher papers (such as premium cotton papers, 200–300 Sheffield units) have been engineered to work very well in laser printers, despite surface texture. Before using these types of paper, consult your paper supplier.

- Suitable sheet-to-sheet coefficient of friction (0.4–0.6)
- Sufficient bending resistance in the direction of feed

Recycled paper, paper of lower weight ($<$60 g/m^2 [16 lb bond]) and/or lower caliper ($<$3.8 mils [0.1 mm]), and paper that is cut grain-short for portrait (or short-edge) fed printers may have lower bending resistance than is required for reliable paper feeding. Before using these types of paper for laser (electrophotographic) printing, consult your paper supplier. Remember that these are general guidelines only and that paper meeting these guidelines may still cause paper feeding problems in any laser printer (for example, if the paper curls excessively under normal printing conditions).

Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18 to 24°C (65 to 75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60%.
- Store paper in cartons when possible, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.

Supported paper sizes, types, and weights

The following tables provide information on standard and optional paper input sources and the types of paper they support.

Note: To use a paper size that is unlisted, configure a Universal Paper Size.

Supported paper sizes

Measurements apply to simplex (one-sided) printing only. For duplex (two-sided) printing, the minimum size is 139.7 x 210 mm (5.50 x 8.27 in.).

Paper size	Dimensions	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose tray	Optional 550-sheet specialty media drawer
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
JIS B5	182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Letter	215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Legal	215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Executive	184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Oficio (México)	215.9 x 340.4 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Folio	215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Statement	139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
* This size setting formats the envelope for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software program.						

Paper size	Dimensions	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose tray	Optional 550-sheet specialty media drawer
Universal **Note:** Turn Size Sensing off to support universal sizes that are close to standard media sizes.	148 x 210 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 914.4 mm (8.5 x 36 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 1219.2 mm (8.5 x 48 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
7 3/4 Envelope (Monarch)	98.4 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
9 Envelope	98.4 x 226.1 mm (3.875 x 8.9 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
Com 10 Envelope	104.8 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
DL Envelope	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
C5 Envelope	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
B5 Envelope	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓
Other Envelope*	85.7 x 165 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3.375 x 6.50 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	X	✓	✓

* This size setting formats the envelope for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software program.

Supported paper types and weights

The printer engine supports 60–220 g/m^2 (16–58 lb) paper weights.

Note: Labels, transparencies, envelopes, and card stock always print at reduced speed.

Paper type	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose tray	Optional 550-sheet specialty media drawer
Paper • Plain • Bond • Colored • Custom Type <x> • Letterhead • Preprinted • Light • Glossy • Heavy • Heavy Glossy • Rough/Cotton • Recycled	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Card stock	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Transparencies[*]	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Labels • Paper • Vinyl	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Glossy paper	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Envelopes	X	X	X	✓	✓
[*] Do not use inkjet or 3M CG3710 transparencies.					

Printing

This chapter covers printing, printer reports, and job cancelation. The selection and handling of paper and specialty media can affect how reliably documents print. For more information, see "Avoiding jams" on page 262 and "Storing paper" on page 76.

Printing a document

Printing a document

1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, set the Paper Type and Paper Size to match the loaded paper.

2 Send the print job:

For Windows users

a With a document open, click **File** ➞ **Print**.

b Click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**, and then adjust the settings as needed.

> **Note:** To print on a specific size or type of paper, adjust the paper size or type settings to match the loaded paper, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.

c Click **OK**, and then click **Print**.

For Macintosh users

a Customize the settings as needed in the Page Setup dialog:
   1 With a document open, choose **File** > **Page Setup**.
   2 Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the loaded paper.
   3 Click **OK**.

b Customize the settings as needed in the Print dialog:
   1 With a document open, choose **File** > **Print**.
      If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
   2 From the Print dialog and pop-up menus, adjust the settings as needed.

   > **Note:** To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the loaded paper, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.

   3 Click **Print**.

Printing on specialty media

Tips on using letterhead

- Use letterhead designed specifically for laser printers.
- Print samples on the letterhead being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Before loading letterhead, fan the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.

- Page orientation is important when printing on letterhead. For information on how to load letterhead, see:
  - "Loading trays" on page 64
  - "Loading the multipurpose feeder" on page 66

Tips on using transparencies

Print samples on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.

When printing on transparencies:
- Feed transparencies from any tray or drawer, except the optional 2,000-sheet tray.
- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure transparencies are able to withstand temperatures up to 170°C (338°F) without melting, discoloring, offsetting, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- To prevent print quality problems, avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies.
- Before loading transparencies, fan the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.
- We recommend Lexmark part number 12A8240 for letter-size transparencies and Lexmark part number 12A8241 for A4-size transparencies.

Tips on using envelopes

Print samples on the envelopes being considered for use before buying large quantities.

When printing on envelopes:
- Use envelopes designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure the envelopes can withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without sealing, wrinkling, curling excessively, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- For the best performance, use envelopes made from 90 g/m^2 (24 lb bond) paper. Use up to 105 g/m^2 (28 lb bond) weight for envelopes as long as the cotton content is 25% or less. All-cotton envelopes must not exceed 90 g/m^2 (24 lb bond) weight.
- Use only new envelopes.
- To optimize performance and minimize jams, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way
  - Have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing
  - Have metal clasps, string ties, or folding bars
  - Have an interlocking design
  - Have postage stamps attached
  - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position
  - Have bent corners
  - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes
- Adjust the width guides to fit the width of the envelopes.

Note: A combination of high humidity (over 60%) and the high printing temperature may wrinkle or seal envelopes.

Tips on using labels

Print samples on the labels being considered for use before buying large quantities.

Note: Use only paper label sheets. Vinyl, pharmacy, and dual-sided labels are not supported.

For detailed information on label printing, characteristics, and design, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com/publications**.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to verify that:
  - The labels can withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
  - Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats can withstand up to 25 psi (172 kPa) pressure without delaminating, oozing around the edges, or releasing hazardous fumes.
- Do not use labels with slick backing material.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate the printer and the cartridge with adhesive, and could void the printer and cartridge warranties.
- Do not use labels with exposed adhesive.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 in.) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Be sure adhesive backing does not reach to the sheet edge. Zone coating of the adhesive at least 1 mm (0.04 in.) away from edges is recommended. Adhesive material contaminates the printer and could void the warranty.
- If zone coating of the adhesive is not possible, remove a 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) strip on the leading and driver edge, and use a non-oozing adhesive.
- Portrait orientation works best, especially when printing bar codes.

Tips on using card stock

Card stock is heavy, single-ply specialty media. Many of its variable characteristics, such as moisture content, thickness, and texture, can significantly impact print quality. Print samples on the card stock being considered for use before buying large quantities.

When printing on card stock:

- Make sure the Paper Type is Card Stock.
- Select the appropriate Paper Texture setting.
- Be aware that preprinting, perforation, and creasing may significantly affect the print quality and cause jams or other paper-handling problems.
- Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure the card stock can withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use preprinted card stock manufactured with chemicals that may contaminate the printer. Preprinting introduces semi-liquid and volatile components into the printer.
- Use grain short card stock when possible.

Printing confidential and other held jobs

Holding jobs in the printer

When sending a job to the printer, you can specify that you want the printer to hold the job in memory until you start the job from the printer control panel. All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called *held jobs*.

Note: Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.

Job type	Description
Confidential	When you send a Confidential print job to the printer, you must create a PIN from the computer. The PIN must be four digits using the numbers 0–9. The job is held in printer memory until you enter the PIN from the printer control panel and choose to print or delete the job.
Verify	When you send a Verify print job, the printer prints one copy and holds the remaining copies in printer memory. Verify lets you examine the first copy to see if it is satisfactory before printing the remaining copies. Once all copies are printed, the job is automatically deleted from printer memory.
Reserve	When you send a Reserve print job, the printer does not print the job immediately. It stores the job in memory so you can print the job later. The job is held in memory until you delete it from the Held Jobs menu.
Repeat	When you send a Repeat print job, the printer prints all requested copies of the job *and* stores the job in memory so you can print additional copies later. You can print additional copies as long as the job remains stored in memory.

Other types of held jobs include:

- Profiles from various sources including Lexmark Document Solutions Suite (LDSS)
- Forms from a kiosk
- Bookmarks
- Jobs not printed, which are called *parked jobs*

Printing confidential and other held jobs from Windows

Note: Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after they print. Repeat and Reserve jobs continue to be held in the printer until you choose to delete them.

1 With a document open, click **File → Print**.

2 Click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**.

3 Click **Other Options**, and then click **Print and Hold**.

4 Select your job type (Confidential, Reserve, Repeat, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential job, also enter a four-digit PIN.

5 Click **OK** or **Print**, and then go to the printer to release the job.

6 On the home screen, touch **Held jobs**.

7 Touch your user name.

> **Note:** A maximum of 500 results can be displayed for held jobs. If your name does not appear, touch the down arrow until your name appears, or touch **Search Held Jobs** if there are a large number of held jobs in the printer.

8 Touch **Confidential Jobs**.

9 Enter your PIN.

10 Touch the job you want to print.

11 Touch **Print**, or touch the arrows to increase or decrease the number of copies, and then touch **Print**.

Printing confidential and other held jobs from a Macintosh computer

Note: Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after they print. Repeat and Reserve jobs continue to be held in the printer until you choose to delete them.

1 With a document open, choose **File** > **Print**.

If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.

2 From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose **Job Routing**.

3 Select your job type (Confidential, Reserve, Repeat, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential job, also enter a four-digit PIN.

4 Click OK or Print, and then go to the printer to release the job.

5 On the home screen, touch **Held jobs**.

6 Touch your user name.

> **Note:** A maximum of 500 results can be displayed for held jobs. If your name does not appear, touch the down arrow until your name appears, or touch **Search Held Jobs** if there are a large number of held jobs in the printer.

7 Touch **Confidential Jobs**.

8 Enter your PIN.

9 Touch the job you want to print.

10 Touch **Print**, or touch the arrows to increase or decrease the number of copies, and then touch **Print**.

Printing from a flash drive

A USB port is located on the printer control panel. Insert a flash drive to print supported file types. Supported file types include: .pdf, .gif, .jpeg, .jpg, .bmp, .png, .tiff, .tif, .pcx, and .dcx.

Many flash drives are tested and approved for use with the printer. For more information, visit the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Notes:

- Hi-Speed flash drives must support the Full-speed standard. Flash drives supporting only USB Low-speed capabilities are not supported.
- USB devices must support the FAT (*File Allocation Tables*) system. Devices formatted with NTFS (*New Technology File System*) or any other file system are not supported.
- If selecting an encrypted .pdf file, then enter the file password from the printer control panel.
- Before printing an encrypted .pdf file, enter the file password from the printer control panel.
- You cannot print files for which you do not have printing permissions.

To print from a flash drive:

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 Insert a flash drive into the USB port.
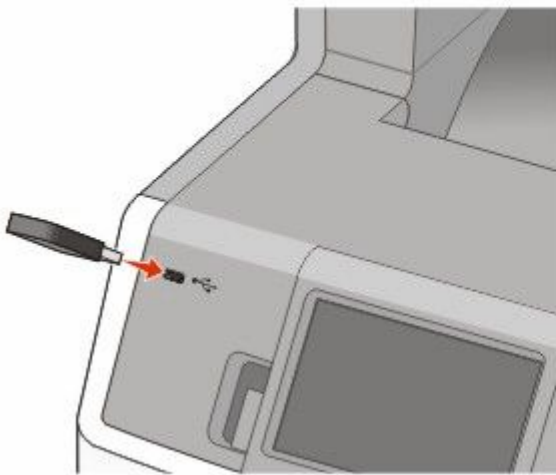
Notes:

- If you insert the flash drive when the printer requires attention, such as when a jam has occurred, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is printing other jobs, then `Printer Busy` appears. After the other jobs are processed, you may need to view the held jobs list to print documents from the flash drive.

3 Touch the document you want to print.

Note: Folders found on the flash drive appear as folders. File names are appended by the extension type (for example, .jpg).

4 Touch the arrows if you want to increase the number of printed copies.

5 Touch **Print**.

 Note: Do not remove the flash drive from the USB port until the document has finished printing.

If you leave the flash drive in the printer after leaving the initial USB menu screen, then you can still print .pdf files from the flash drive as held jobs.

Printing photos from a PictBridge-enabled digital camera

You can connect a PictBridge-enabled digital camera to the printer, and use the buttons on the camera to select and print photos.

1 Insert one end of the USB cable into the camera.

 Note: Use only the USB cable that came with your camera.

2 Insert the other end of the USB cable into the USB port on the front of the printer.
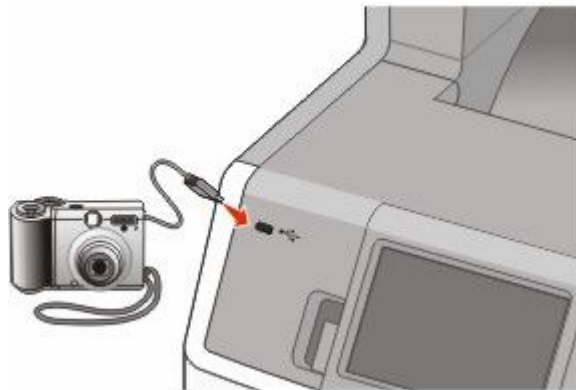
 Notes:

- Make sure the PictBridge-enabled digital camera is set to the correct USB mode. See the camera documentation for more information.
- If the PictBridge connection is successful, then a confirmation message appears on the printer display.

3 Follow the instructions on the camera to select and print photos.

Note: If the printer is turned off while the camera is connected, then you must disconnect and then reconnect the camera.

Printing information pages

Printing a font sample list

To print samples of the fonts currently available for your printer:

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch .

3 Touch **Reports**.

4 Touch the down arrow until `Print Fonts` appears.

5 Touch **Print Fonts**.

6 Touch **PCL Fonts** or **PostScript Fonts**.

A font sample list prints.

7 Touch ⌂ to return to the home screen.

Printing a directory list

A directory list shows the resources stored in flash memory or on the printer hard disk.

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch ▦.

3 Touch **Reports**.

4 Touch the down arrow until `Print Directory` appears.

5 Touch **Print Directory**.

Printing the print quality test pages

Print the print quality test pages to isolate print quality problems.

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Hold down ② and ⑥ while turning the printer on.

3 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.

4 Touch the down arrow until `Print Quality Pages` appears.

5 Touch **Print Quality Pages**.

The print quality test pages print.

6 Touch **Back**.

7 Touch **Exit Configuration**.

Printing in black and white

To print all text and graphics using only the black toner cartridge, set the printer to Black Only.

Note: You may override this setting using the printer driver.

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch ▦.

3 Touch **Settings**.

4 Touch the down arrow until `Print Settings` appears.

5 Touch **Print Settings**.

6 Touch **Quality Menu**.

7 Touch the right arrow to select **Black Only**.

8 Touch **Submit**.

9 Touch to return to the home screen.

Using Max Speed and Max Yield

The Max Speed and Max Yield settings let you choose between a faster print speed or a higher toner yield. Max Yield is the factory default setting.

- **Max Speed**—Prints in color mode unless black only is selected by the driver. Prints in black only mode if the black only driver setting is selected.
- **Max Yield**—Switches from black to color mode based on the color content found on each page. Frequent color mode switching can result in slower printing if the content of pages is mixed.

To specify the setting:

1 Open a Web browser.

2 In the address bar, type the network printer or print server IP address, and then press **Enter**.

3 Click **Configuration**.

4 Click **Print Settings**.

5 Click **Setup Menu**.

6 From the Printer Usage list, select **Max Speed** or **Max Yield**.

7 Click **Submit**.

Canceling a print job

Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

1 Touch **Cancel Jobs** on the touch screen, or press on the keypad.

2 Touch the job you want to cancel.

3 Touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

Canceling a print job from the computer

To cancel a print job, do one of the following:

For Windows users

1 Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

2 In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.

3 Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

The printer folder opens.

4 Double-click the printer icon.

5 Select the job to cancel.

6 From the keyboard, press **Delete**.

From the Windows taskbar:

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the right corner of the taskbar.

1 Double-click the printer icon.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

2 Select a job to cancel.

3 From the keyboard, press **Delete**.

For Macintosh users
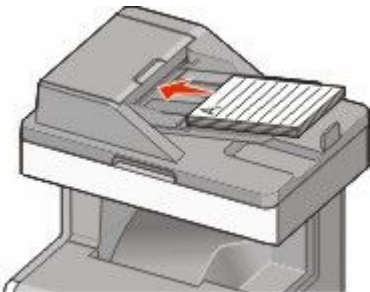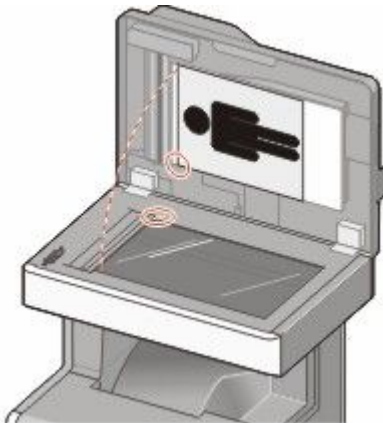
In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later:

1 From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences**.

2 Click **Print & Fax**, and then double-click the printer icon.

3 From the printer window, select the job to cancel.

4 From the icon bar at the top of the window, click the **Delete** icon.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 and earlier:

1 From the Go menu, choose **Applications**.

2 Double-click **Utilities**, and then double-click **Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.

3 Double-click the printer icon.

4 From the printer window, select the job to cancel.

5 From the icon bar at the top of the window, click the **Delete** icon.

Copying

ADF	Scanner glass
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

Making copies

Making a quick copy

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

  Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, press ◇.

4 If you placed the document on the scanner glass, then touch **Finish the Job** to return to the home screen.

Copying using the ADF

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF.

  Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 Adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**, or use the keypad to enter the number of copies.

  The copy screen appears.

4 Change the copy settings as needed.

5 Touch **Copy It**.

Copying using the scanner glass

1 Place an original document facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

2 On the home screen, touch **Copy**, or use the keypad to enter the number of copies.

The copy screen appears.

3 Change the copy settings as needed.

4 Touch **Copy It**.

5 If you have more pages to scan, then place the next document on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the Next Page**.

6 Touch **Finish the Job** to return to the home screen.

Copying photos

1 Place a photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

2 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

3 Touch **Options**.

4 Touch **Content**.

5 Touch **Photograph**.

6 Touch **Done**.

7 Touch **Copy It**.

8 Touch **Scan the Next Page** or **Finish the Job**.

Copying on specialty media

Making transparencies

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Copy from**, and then identify the size of the original document.

5 Touch **Copy to**, and then touch the tray that contains transparencies, or touch **Manual Feeder** and then place transparencies in the multipurpose feeder.

6 Touch the desired size of the transparencies, and then touch **Continue**.

7 Touch the arrows until **Transparency** appears.

8 Touch **Transparency**, and then touch **Continue**.

9 Touch **Copy It**.

Copying to letterhead

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Copy from**, and then identify the size of the original document.

5 Touch **Copy to**, and then touch **Manual Feeder** and place letterhead face up, top edge first in the multipurpose feeder.

6 Touch the desired size of the letterhead, and then touch **Continue**.

7 Touch the arrows until `Letterhead` appears.

8 Touch **Letterhead**, and then touch **Continue**.

9 Touch **Copy It**.

Customizing copy settings

Copying from one size to another

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Copy from**, and then identify the size of the original document.

5 Touch **Copy to**, and then select the size you want the copy to be.

> **Note:** If you select a paper size that is different from the "Copy from" size, then the printer will scale the size automatically.

6 Touch **Copy It**.

Making copies using paper from a selected tray

During the copy process, you can select the tray that contains the paper type of choice. For example, if specialty media is located in the multipurpose feeder, and you want to make copies on that media:

1   Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2   If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3   On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4   Touch **Copy from**, and then identify the size of the original document.

5   Touch **Copy to**, and then touch **Manual Feeder** or the tray that contains the paper type you want.

   Note: If you choose Manual Feeder, then you will need to also select the paper size and type.

6   Touch **Copy It**.

Copying a document that contains mixed paper sizes

Use the ADF to copy an original document that contains mixed paper sizes. Depending on the paper sizes loaded and the "Copy to" and "Copy from" settings, each copy is either printed on mixed paper sizes (Example 1) or scaled to fit a single paper size (Example 2).

Example 1: Copying to mixed paper sizes

The printer has two paper trays, one tray loaded with letter-size paper and the other with legal-size paper. A document that contains letter- and legal-size pages needs to be copied.

1   Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2   If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3   On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4   Touch **Copy from**, and then touch **Auto Size Sense**.

5   Touch **Copy to**, and then touch **Auto Size Match**.

6   Touch **Copy It**.

   The scanner identifies the mixed paper sizes as they scan. Copies are printed on mixed paper sizes corresponding to the paper sizes of the original document.

Example 2: Copying to a single paper size

The printer has one paper tray, loaded with letter-size paper. A document that contains letter- and legal-size pages needs to be copied.

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

>   **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Copy from**, and then touch **Mixed Letter/Legal**.

5 Touch **Copy to**, and then touch **Letter**.

6 Touch **Copy It**.

>   The scanner identifies the mixed paper sizes as they scan and then scales the legal-size pages to print on letter-size paper.

Copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing)

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

>   **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 From the Sides (Duplex) area, touch the button that looks the way you want your copies duplexed.

>   The first number represents sides of the original documents; the second number represents sides of the copy. For example, select 1-sided to 2-sided if you have 1-sided original documents and you want 2-sided copies.

5 Touch **Copy It**.

Reducing or enlarging copies

Copies can be reduced to 25% of the original document size or enlarged to 400% of the original document size. The factory default setting for Scale is Auto. If you leave Scale set to Auto, the content of your original document will be scaled to fit the size of the paper onto which you are copying.

To reduce or enlarge a copy:

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

>   **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 From the Scale area, touch the arrows to enlarge or reduce your copies.

Touching "Copy to" or "Copy from" after setting Scale manually changes the scale value back to Auto.

5 Touch **Copy It**.

Adjusting copy quality

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Options**.

5 Touch **Content**.

6 Touch the button that best represents what you are copying:

- **Text**—Used for original documents that are mostly text or line art
- **Text/Photo**—Used when the original documents are a mixture of text and graphics or pictures
- **Photograph**—Used when the original document is a high-quality photograph or inkjet print
- **Printed Image**—Used when copying halftone photographs, graphics such as documents printed on a laser printer, or pages from a magazine or newspaper that are composed primarily of images

7 Touch **Done**.

8 Touch **Copy It**.

Collating copies

If you print multiple copies of a document, then you can choose to print each copy as a set (collated) or to print the copies as groups of pages (not collated).

Collated   **Not collated**

By default, Collate is set to On. If you do not want to collate your copies, then change the setting to Off.

To turn collation off:

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Use the keypad to enter the number of copies.

5 Touch **Off** if you do not want your copies collated.

6 Touch **Copy It**.

Placing separator sheets between copies

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Options**.

5 Touch **Separator Sheets**.

   Note: Collate must be On for the separator sheets to be placed between copies. If Collate is Off, the separator sheets are added to the end of the print job.

6 Select one of the following:

- **Between Copies**
- **Between Jobs**
- **Between Pages**

7 Touch **Done**.

8 Touch **Copy It**.

Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet

In order to save paper, you can copy either two or four consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto a single sheet of paper.

Notes:

- The Paper Size must be set to Letter, Legal, A4, or B5 JIS.
- The Copy Size must be set to 100%.

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Select a duplex setting.

5 Touch **Options**.

6 Touch **Paper Saver**.

7 Select the desired output.

8 Touch **Print Page Borders** if you want a box drawn around each page of the copies.

9 Touch **Done**.

10 Touch **Copy It**.

Creating a custom job (job build)

The custom job or job build is used to combine one or more sets of original documents into a single copy job. Each set may be scanned using different job parameters. When a copy job is submitted and Custom Job is enabled, the scanner scans the first set of original documents using the supplied parameters, and then it scans the next set with the same or different parameters.

The definition of a set depends on the scan source:

- If you scan a document on the scanner glass, a set consists of one page.
- If you scan multiple pages using the ADF, a set consists of all scanned pages until the ADF becomes empty.
- If you scan one page using the ADF, a set consists of one page.

For example:

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

  Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Options**.

5 Touch **Custom Job**.

6 Touch **On**.

7 Touch **Done**.

8 Touch **Copy It**.

  When the end of a set is reached, the scan screen appears.

9 Load the next document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the Automatic Document Feeder** or **Scan the flatbed**.

  Note: If required, change the job settings.

10 If you have another document to scan, load the next document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the Automatic Document Feeder** or **Scan the flatbed**. Otherwise, touch **Finish the job**.

Using job interrupt

Job interrupt pauses the current print job and lets you print copies.

Note: The Job Interrupt setting must be On for this feature to function.

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, press ◇.

4 If you placed the document on the scanner glass, then touch **Finish the Job** to return to the home screen.

Placing information on copies

Placing the date and time at the top of each page

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Options**.

5 Touch **Header/Footer**.

6 Pick an area of the page to place the date and time.

7 Touch **Date/Time**, and then touch **Continue**.

8 Touch **Done**.

9 Touch **Copy It**.

Placing an overlay message on each page

An overlay message can be placed on each page. The message choices are Urgent, Confidential, Copy, or Draft. To place a message on the copies:

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Options**.

5 Touch **Overlay**.

6 Touch the button containing the overlay you want to use.

7 Touch **Done**.

8 Touch **Copy It**.

Canceling a copy job

Canceling a copy job while the document is in the ADF

When the ADF begins processing a document, the scanning screen appears. To cancel the copy job, touch **Cancel Job** on the touch screen.

A "Canceling scan job" screen appears. The ADF clears all pages in the ADF and cancels the job.

Canceling a copy job while copying pages using the scanner glass

Touch **Cancel Job** on the touch screen.

A "Canceling scan job" screen appears. Once the job is canceled, the copy screen appears.

Canceling a copy job while the pages are being printed

1 Touch **Cancel Job** on the touch screen, or press on the keypad.

2 Touch the job you want to cancel.

3 Touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

The remaining print job is canceled. The home screen appears.

Understanding the copy screens and options

Copy from

This option opens a screen where you can enter the size of the documents you are going to copy.
- Touch a paper size button to select it as the "Copy from" setting. The copy screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- When "Copy from" is set to Mixed Letter/Legal, you can copy an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When "Copy from" is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Copy to

This option opens a screen where you can enter the size and type of paper on which your copies will be printed.
- Touch a paper size button to select it as the "Copy to" setting. The copy screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- If the size settings for "Copy from" and "Copy to" are different, the printer automatically adjusts the Scale setting to accommodate the difference.

- If the type or size of paper that you want to copy onto is not loaded in one of the trays, touch **Manual Feeder**, and manually send the paper through the multipurpose feeder.
- When "Copy to" is set to Auto Size Match, each copy matches the size of the original document. If a matching paper size is not in one of the trays, the printer scales each copy to fit loaded paper.

Scale

This option creates an image from your copy that is proportionally scaled anywhere between 25% and 400%. Scale can also be set for you automatically.

- When you want to copy from one size of paper to another, such as from legal-size to letter-size paper, setting the "Copy from" and "Copy to" paper sizes automatically changes the scale to keep all the original document information on your copy.
- Touch the left arrow to decrease the value by 1%; touch the right arrow to increase the value by 1%.
- Hold your finger on an arrow to make a continuous increment change.
- Hold your finger on an arrow for two seconds to cause the pace of the change to accelerate.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your copies will turn out in relation to the original document.

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type. Choose from Text, Text/Photo, Photograph, or Printed Image.

- **Text**—Emphasize sharp, black, high-resolution text against a clean, white background
- **Text/Photo**—Used when the original documents are a mixture of text and graphics or pictures
- **Photograph**—Tells the scanner to pay extra attention to graphics and pictures. This setting increases the time it takes to scan, but emphasizes a reproduction of the full dynamic range of tones in the original document.
- **Printed Image**—Used when copying halftone photographs, graphics such as documents printed on a laser printer, or pages from a magazine or newspaper that are composed primarily of images

Sides (Duplex)

Use this option to select duplex settings. You can print copies on one or two sides, make two-sided copies (duplex) of two-sided original documents, make two-sided copies from one-sided original documents, or make one-sided copies (simplex) from two-sided original documents.

Collate

This option keeps the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies of the document. The factory default setting for Collate is on; the output pages of your copies will be ordered (1,2,3) (1,2,3) (1,2,3). If you want all the copies of each page to remain together, turn Collate off, and your copies will be ordered (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (3,3,3).

Options

Touching the Options button opens a screen where you can change Paper Saver, Advanced Imaging, Custom Job, Separator Sheets, Margin Shift, Edge Erase, Header/Footer, Overlay, Content, Advanced Duplex, and Save as Shortcut settings.

Paper Saver

This option lets you print two or more sheets of an original document together on the same page. Paper Saver is also called N-up printing. The N stands for Number. For example, 2-up would print two pages of your document on a single page, and 4-up would print four pages of your document on a single page. Touching Print Page Borders adds or removes the outline border surrounding the original document pages on the output page.

Advanced Imaging

This option lets you adjust Background Removal, Contrast, Shadow Detail, Scan Edge to Edge, Color Balance, and mirror image before you copy the document.

Custom Job

This option combines multiple scanning jobs into a single job.

Separator Sheets

This option places a blank piece of paper between copies, pages, and print jobs. The separator sheets can be drawn from a tray that contains a type or color of paper that is different from the paper your copies are printed on.

Margin Shift

This option increases the size of the margin a specified distance. This can be useful in providing space to bind or hole-punch copies. Use the increase or decrease arrows to set how much of a margin you want. If the additional margin is too large, then the copy will be cropped.

Edge Erase

This option eliminates smudges or information around the edges of your document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase erases whatever is within the selected area, leaving nothing printed on that portion of the paper.

Header/Footer

This option turns on the Date/Time, Page number, Bates number, or Custom text and prints them in the specified header or footer location.

Overlay

This option creates a watermark (or message) that overlays the content of your copy. You can choose between Urgent, Confidential, Copy, and Draft, or you can enter a custom message in the "Enter custom text" field. The word you pick will appear, faintly, in large print across each page.

Note: A custom overlay can also be created by your system support person. When a custom overlay is created, a button with an icon of that overlay will be available.

Content

This option enhances copy quality. Choose from Text, Text/Photo, Photograph, or Printed Image.

- **Text**—Use this setting when copying original documents that are mostly text or line art.
- **Text/Photo**—Use this setting when copying original documents that are a mixture of text and graphics or pictures.

- **Photograph**—Use this setting when copying an original document that is a high-quality photograph or inkjet print.
- **Printed Image**—Use this setting when copying halftone photographs, documents printed on a laser printer, or pages from a magazine or newspaper.

Advanced Duplex

This option controls whether the documents are one-sided or two-sided, what orientation your original documents have, and how your documents are bound.

Note: Some Advanced Duplex options may not be available on all printer models.
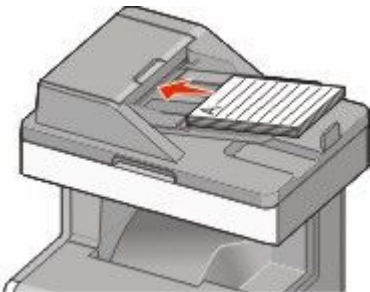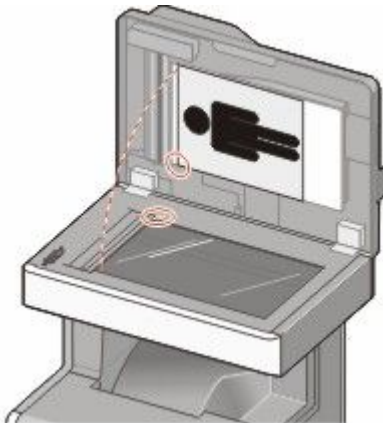
Save as Shortcut

This option allows the current settings to be saved as a shortcut.

Improving copy quality

Question	Tip
When should I use Text mode?	• Use text mode when text preservation is the main goal of the copy, and preserving images copied from the original document is not a concern. • Text mode is recommended for receipts, carbon copy forms, and documents that contain only text or fine line art.
When should I use Text/Photo mode?	• Use Text/Photo mode when copying an original document that contains a mixture of text and graphics. • Text/Photo mode is recommended for magazine articles, business graphics, and brochures.
When should I use Printed Image mode?	Use Printed Image mode when copying halftone photographs, graphics such as documents printed on a laser printer, or pages from a magazine or newspaper
When should I use Photograph mode?	Use Photograph mode when the original document is a high-quality photograph or inkjet print.

E-mailing

ADF	Scanner glass
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

You can use the printer to e-mail scanned documents to one or more recipients. There are three ways to send an e-mail from the printer. You can type the e-mail address, use a shortcut number, or use the address book.

Getting ready to e-mail

Setting up the e-mail function

For e-mail to operate, it must be turned on in the printer configuration and have a valid IP address or gateway address. To set up the e-mail function:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Default Settings, click **E-mail/FTP Settings**.

4 Click **E-mail Settings**.

5 Click **Setup E-mail Server**.

6 Fill in the fields with the appropriate information.

7 Click **Add**.

Configuring the e-mail settings

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

>**Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **E-mail/FTP Settings**.

4 Click **E-mail Settings**.

5 Fill in the fields with the appropriate information.

6 Click **Submit**.

Creating an e-mail shortcut

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

>**Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Other Settings, click **Manage Shortcuts**.

4 Click **E-mail Shortcut Setup**.

5 Type a unique name for the recipient, and then enter the e-mail address.

>**Note:** If you are entering multiple addresses, then separate each address with a comma (,).

6 Select the scan settings (Format, Content, Color, and Resolution).

7 Enter a shortcut number, and then click **Add**.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the touch screen

1 On the home screen, touch **E-mail**.

2 Type the recipient's e-mail address.

To create a group of recipients, touch **Next address**, and then type the next recipient's e-mail address.

3 Touch **Save as Shortcut**.

4 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then touch **Enter**.

5 Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**.

If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

E-mailing a document

Sending an e-mail using the touch screen

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **E-mail**.

4 Enter the e-mail address or shortcut number.

   To enter additional recipients, touch **Next Address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add.

5 Touch **E-mail It**.

Sending an e-mail using a shortcut number

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Press [#], and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad.

   To enter additional recipients, press **Next address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add.

4 Touch **E-mail It**.

Sending an e-mail using the address book

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **E-mail**.

4 Touch **Search Address Book**.

5 Enter the name or part of the name you are searching for, and then touch **Search**.

6 Touch the name that you want to add to the To: box.

   To enter additional recipients, press **Next address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add, or search the address book.

7 Touch **E-mail It**.

Customizing e-mail settings

Adding e-mail subject and message information

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **E-mail**.

4 Type an e-mail address.

5 Touch **Options**.

6 Touch **Subject**.

7 Type the e-mail subject.

8 Touch **Done**.

9 Touch **Message**.

10 Type an e-mail message.

11 Touch **Done**.

12 Touch **E-mail It**.

Changing the output file type

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **E-mail**.

4 Type an e-mail address.

5 Touch **Options**.

6 Touch the button that represents the file type you want to send.
   - **PDF**—Creates a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
   - **Secure PDF**—Creates an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access
   - **TIFF**—Creates multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.

- **JPEG**—Creates and attaches a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs
- **XPS**—Creates a single XML Paper Specification (XPS) file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third party standalone viewer

7 Touch **E-mail It**.

Note: If you selected Encrypted PDF, then enter your password twice.

Canceling an e-mail

- When using the ADF, touch **Cancel Job** while `Scanning...` appears.
- When using the scanner glass, touch **Cancel Job** while `Scanning...` appears or while `Scan the Next Page`/`Finish the Job` appears.

Understanding e-mail options

Original Size

This option opens a screen where you can choose the size of the documents you are going to e-mail.

- Touch a paper size button to select that size as the Original Size setting. The e-mail screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- When "Original Size" is set to Mixed Letter/Legal, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When "Original Size" is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Sides (Duplex)

This option informs the printer if the original document is simplex (printed on one side) or duplex (printed on both sides). This lets the scanner know what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the e-mail.

Orientation

This option tells the printer whether the original document is in portrait or landscape orientation and then changes the Sides and Binding settings to match the original document orientation.

Binding

Tells the printer whether the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

E-mail Subject

This option lets you enter a subject line for your e-mail. You can enter up to 255 characters.

E-mail File Name

This option lets you customize the attachment file name.

E-mail Message

This option lets you enter a message that will be sent with your scanned attachment.

Resolution

Adjusts the output quality of your e-mail. Increasing the image resolution increases the e-mail file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the e-mail file size.

Send As

This option sets the output (PDF, TIFF, JPEG or XPS) for the scanned image.

- **PDF**—Creates a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **Secure PDF**—Creates an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access
- **TIFF**—Creates multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **JPEG**—Creates and attaches a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs
- **XPS**—Creates a single XPS file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third party standalone viewer

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type. Choose from Text, Text/Photo, or Photo. Color can be turned on or off with any of the Content choices. Content affects the quality and size of your e-mail.

- **Text**—Emphasizes sharp, black, high-resolution text against a clean, white background
- **Text/Photo**—Used when the original documents are a mixture of text and graphics or pictures
- **Photograph**—Tells the scanner to pay extra attention to graphics and pictures. This setting increases the time it takes to scan, but emphasizes a reproduction of the full dynamic range of tones in the original document. This increases the amount of information saved.
- **Color**—Sets the scan type and output for the e-mail. Color documents can be scanned and sent to an e-mail address.
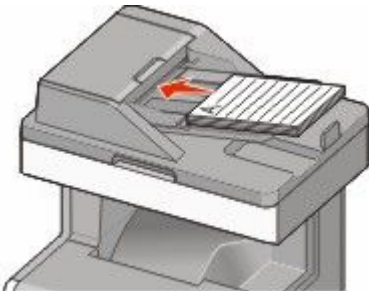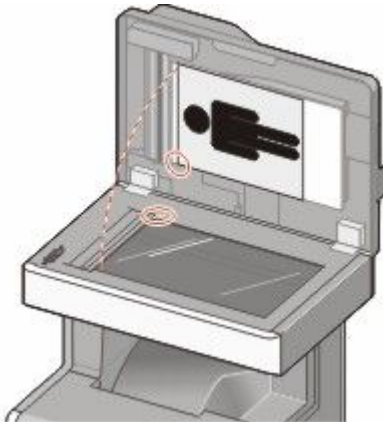
Advanced Options

Touching this button opens a screen where you change Advanced Imaging, Custom Job, Transmission Log, Scan Preview, Edge Erase, and Darkness settings.

- **Advanced Imaging**—Adjusts Background Removal, Contrast, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, and Mirror Image before you copy the document
- **Custom Job (Job Build)**—Combines multiple scanning jobs into a single job
- **Transmission Log**—Prints the transmission log or transmission error log
- **Scan Preview**—Displays the first page of the image before it is included in the e-mail. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.
- **Edge Erase**—Eliminates smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Darkness**—Adjusts how light or dark your scanned e-mails will turn out

Faxing

Note: Fax capabilities may not be available on all printer models.

ADF	Scanner glass
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

Getting the printer ready to fax

The following connection methods may not be applicable in all countries or regions.

Note: During the initial printer setup, deselect Fax and any other function you plan to set up later, and then touch **Continue**. The indicator light may blink red if the fax function is enabled and not fully set up.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch cables or the printer in the area shown while actively sending or receiving a fax.

Initial fax setup

Many countries and regions require outgoing faxes to contain the following information in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page, or on the first page of the transmission: station name (identification of the business, other entity, or individual sending the message) and station number (telephone number of the sending fax machine, business, other entity, or individual).

To enter your fax setup information, use the printer control panel, or use your browser to access the Embedded Web Server and then enter the Settings menu.

Note: If you do not have a TCP/IP environment, then you must use the printer control panel to enter your fax setup information.

Using the printer control panel for fax setup

When the printer is turned on for the first time or if the printer has been off for an extended time, a series of start-up screens appear. If the printer has fax capabilities, then the following screens appear:

Station Name

Station Number

1   When **Station Name** appears, enter the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.

2   After entering the Station Name, touch **Submit**.

3   When **Station Number** appears, enter the printer fax number.

4   After entering the Station Number, touch **Submit**.

Using the Embedded Web Server for fax setup

1   Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the address in the TCP/IP section.

2   Click **Settings**.

3   Click **Fax Settings**.

4   Click **Analog Fax Setup**.

5 Click inside the Station Name box, and then enter the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.

6 Click inside the Station Number box, and then enter the printer fax number.

7 Click **Submit**.

Choosing a fax connection

You can connect the printer with equipment such as a telephone, an answering machine, or a computer modem. To determine the best way to set up the printer, see the following table.

Notes:

- The printer is an analog device that works best when directly connected to the wall outlet. Other devices (such as a telephone or answering machine) can be successfully attached to pass through the printer, as described in the setup steps.
- If you want a digital connection such as ISDN, DSL, or ADSL, a third-party device (such as a DSL filter) is required. Contact your DSL provider for a DSL filter. The DSL filter removes the digital signal on the telephone line that can interfere with the ability of the printer to fax properly.
- You *do not* need to attach the printer to a computer, but you *do* need to connect it to an analog telephone line to send and receive faxes.

Equipment and service options	Fax connection setup
Connect directly to the telephone line	See "Connecting to an analog telephone line" on page 112
Connect to a Digital Subscriber Line (DSL or ADSL) service	See "Connecting to a DSL service" on page 112.
Connect to a Private Branch eXchange (PBX) or Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) system	See "Connecting to a PBX or ISDN system" on page 112.
Use a Distinctive Ring service	See "Connecting to a distinctive ring service" on page 113.
Connect to a telephone line, telephone, and answering machine	See "Connecting the printer and a telephone or answering machine to the same telephone line" on page 114
Connect through an adapter used in your area	See "Connecting to an adapter for your country or region" on page 116.
Connect to a computer with a modem	See "Connecting to a computer with a modem" on page 120.

Connecting to an analog telephone line

If your telecommunications equipment uses a US-style (RJ11) telephone line, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port ⬚.

2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.
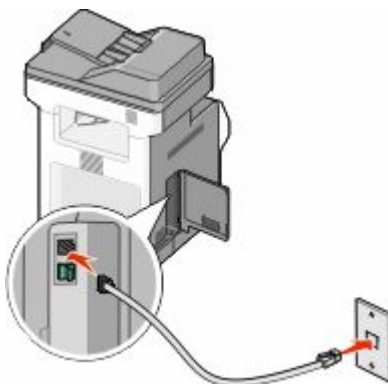
Connecting to a DSL service

If you subscribe to a DSL service, then contact the DSL provider to obtain a DSL filter and telephone cord, and then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port ⬚.

2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the DSL filter.

   Note: Your DSL filter may look different than the one in the illustration.

3 Connect the DSL filter cable to an active telephone wall jack.

Connecting to a PBX or ISDN system

If you use a PBX or ISDN converter or terminal adapter, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port ⬚.

2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the port designated for fax and telephone use.

Notes:

- Make sure the terminal adapter is set to the correct switch type for your region.
- Depending on the ISDN port assignment, you may have to connect to a specific port.
- When using a PBX system, make sure the call waiting tone is off.
- When using a PBX system, dial the outside line prefix before dialing the fax number.
- For more information on using the fax with a PBX system, see the documentation that came with your PBX system.

Connecting to a distinctive ring service

A distinctive ring service may be available from your telephone service provider. This service allows you to have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line with each telephone number having a different ring pattern. This may be useful for distinguishing between fax and voice calls. If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service, follow these steps to connect the equipment:

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port 📞.

2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.
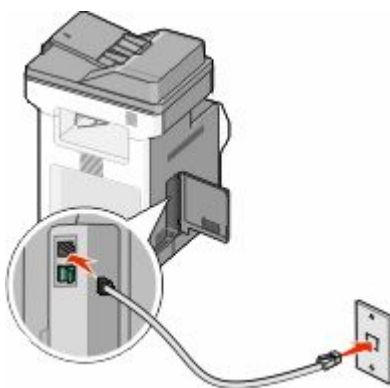
3 Change the Distinctive Rings setting to match the setting you want the printer to answer:

Note: The factory default setting for distinctive rings is **On**. This allows the printer to answer single, double, and triple ring patterns.

a On the home screen, touch ⬅.

b Touch **Settings**.

c Touch **Fax Settings**.

d Touch **Analog Fax Settings**.

e Touch ▼ until `Distinctive Rings` appears

f Touch **Distinctive Rings**.

g Touch the arrow for the pattern setting you want to change.

h Touch **Submit**.

Connecting the printer and a telephone or answering machine to the same telephone line

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port ⬚ .

2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack .
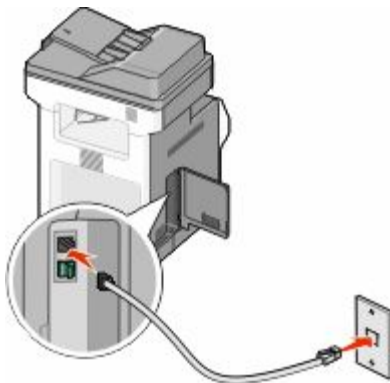
3 Remove the plug from the printer EXT port ⬚.
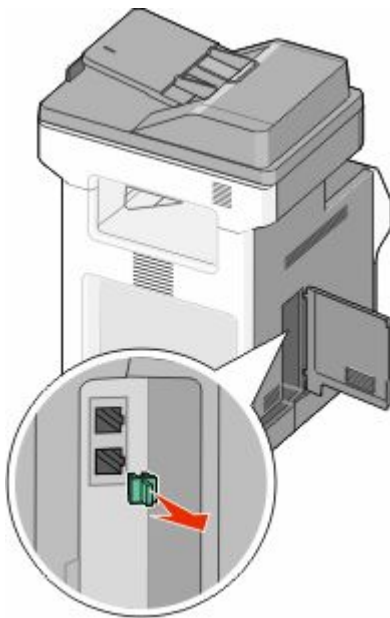
4 Connect your telecommunications equipment directly to the printer EXT port ⬚.

Use one of the following methods:
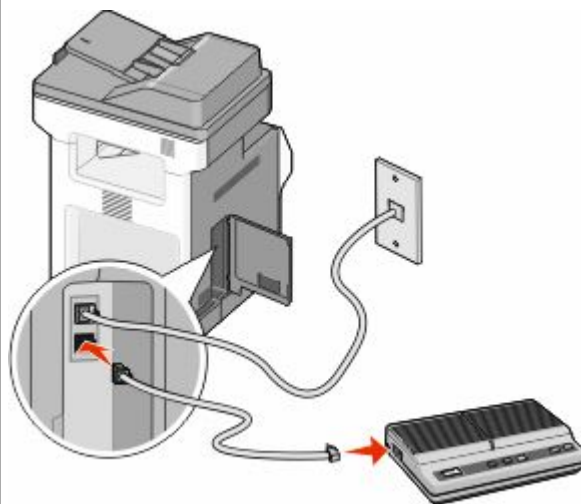
Answering machine	
Answering machine and telephone	
Telephone or a telephone with an integrated answering machine	
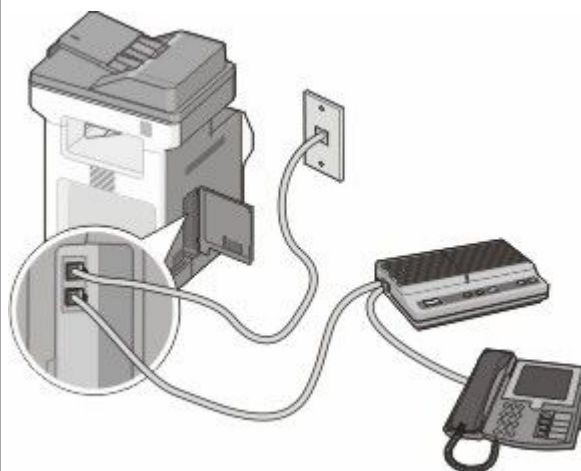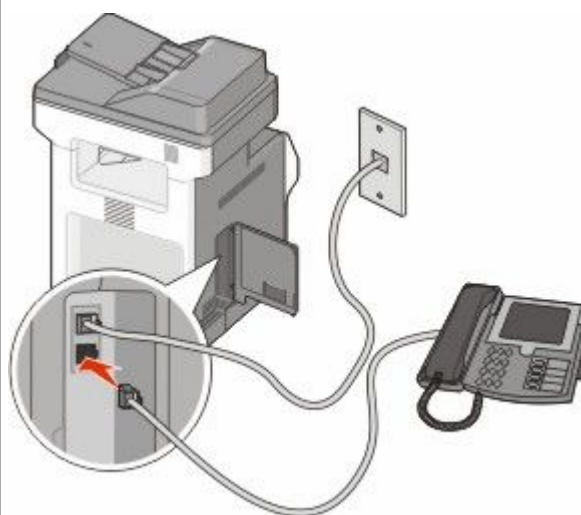
Connecting to an adapter for your country or region

The following countries or regions may require a special adapter to connect the telephone cable to the active telephone wall jack:

Country/region

- Austria
- Cyprus
- Denmark
- Finland
- France
- Germany
- Ireland
- Italy
- New Zealand
- Netherlands
- Norway
- Portugal
- Sweden
- Switzerland
- United Kingdom

Countries or regions except Austria, Germany, and Switzerland

For some countries or regions, a telephone line adapter is included in the box. Use this adapter to connect an answering machine, telephone, or other telecommunications equipment to the printer.

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port 📱.

Note: There is a special RJ-11 plug installed in the printer EXT port 📞. Do not remove this plug. It is necessary for the proper operation of the fax function and connected telephones.

2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the adapter, and then connect the adapter to the active telephone wall jack.

Note: Your telephone adapter may look different than the one shown. It will fit the wall jack used in your location.
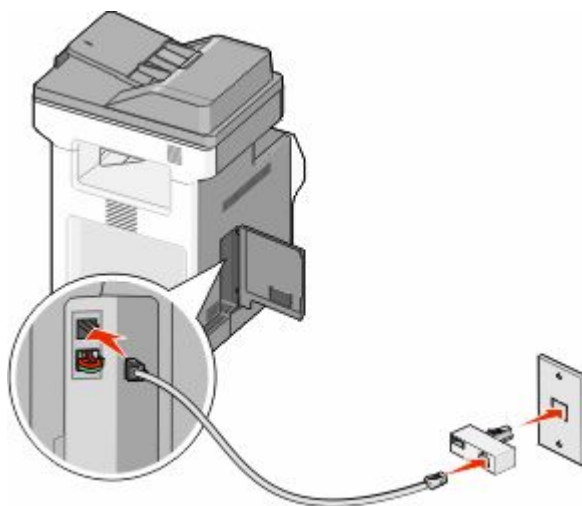
3 Connect the answering machine or telephone to the adapter.

Use one of the following methods:
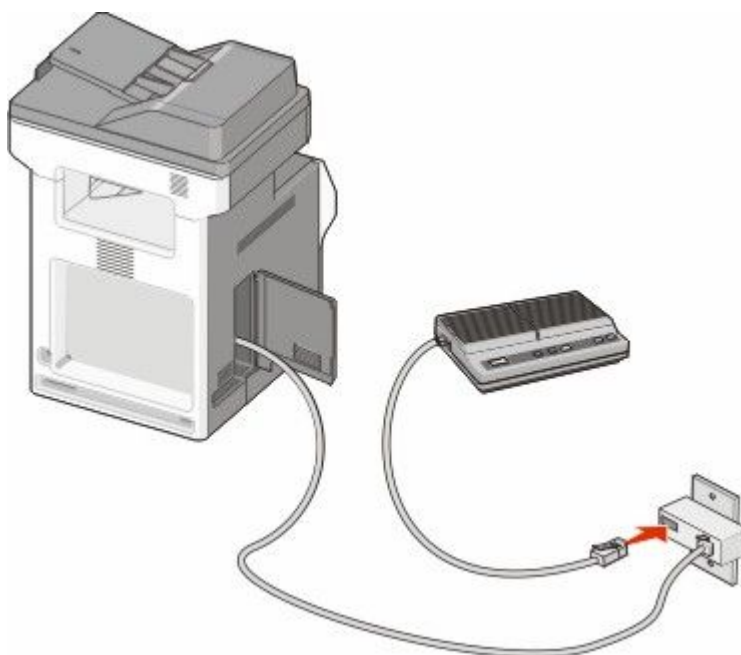
Answering machine	
Telephone	
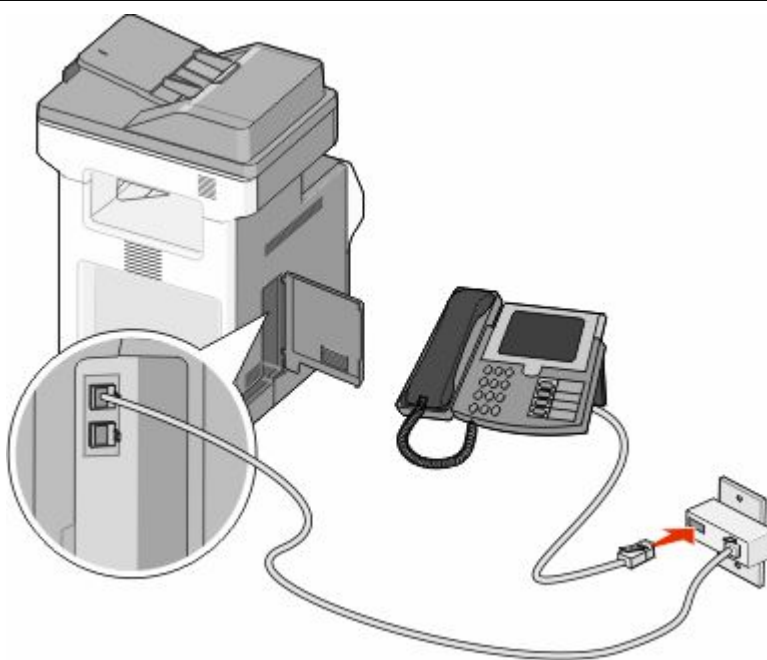
Austria, Germany, and Switzerland

There is a special RJ-11 plug installed in the printer EXT port 📞. Do not remove this plug. It is necessary for the proper operation of the fax function and connected telephones.
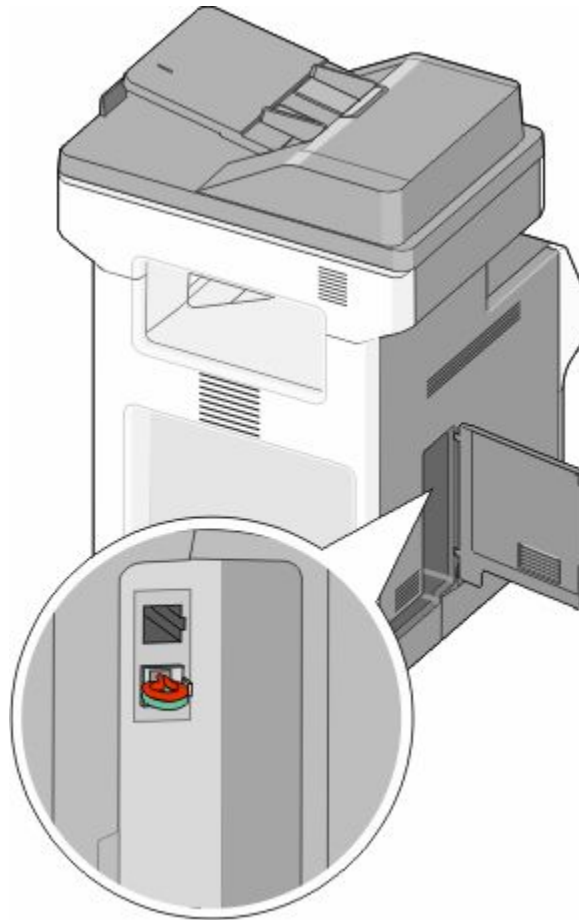
Connecting to a telephone wall jack in Germany

Note: There is a special RJ-11 plug installed in the printer EXT port 📞. Do not remove this plug. It is necessary for the proper operation of the fax function and connected telephones.

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port 📱.

2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the adapter.

Note: Your telephone adapter may look different than the one shown. It will fit the wall jack used in your location.
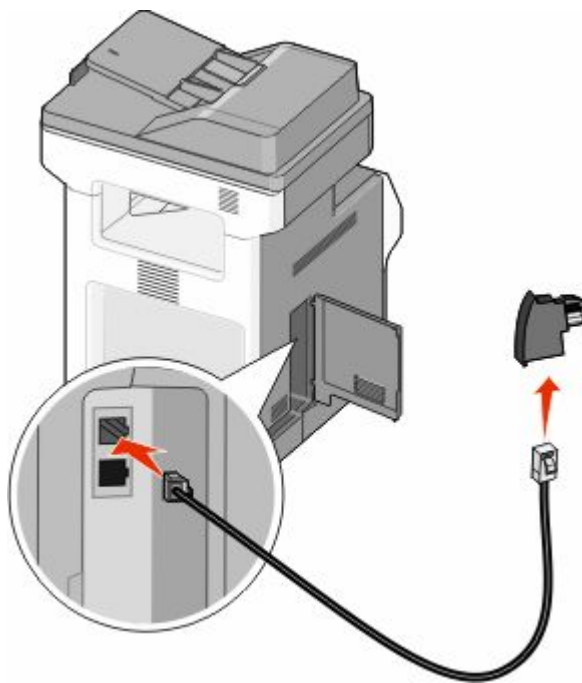
3 Connect the adapter into the N slot of an active analog telephone wall jack.
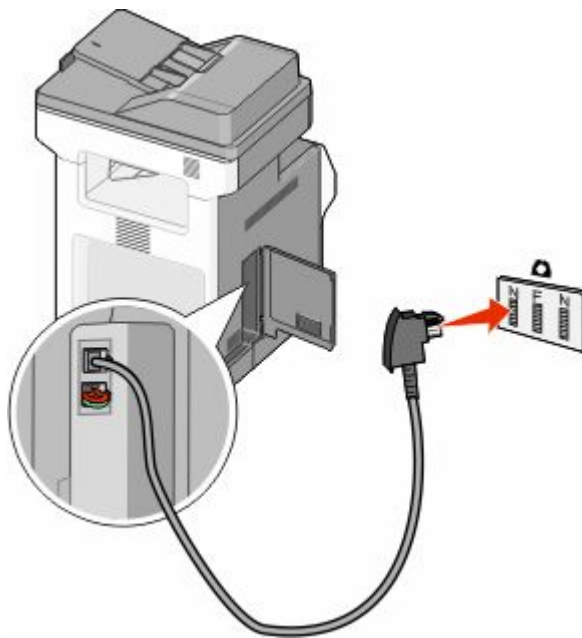
4 If you would like to use the same line for both fax and telephone communication, then connect a second telephone line (not provided) between the telephone and the F slot of an active analog telephone wall jack.
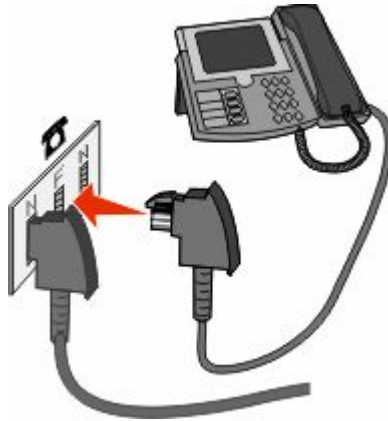
5 If you would like to use the same line for recording messages on your answering machine, then connect a second telephone cable (not provided) between the answering machine and the other N slot of the active analog telephone wall jack.
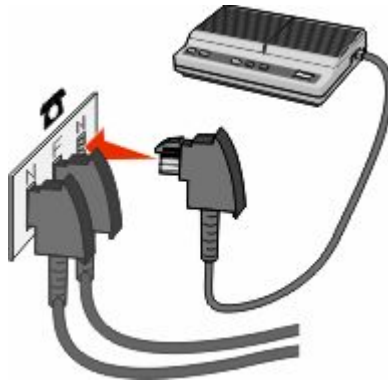
Connecting to a computer with a modem

Connect the printer to a computer with a modem to send faxes from the software program.

Note: Setup steps may vary depending on your country or region.

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .

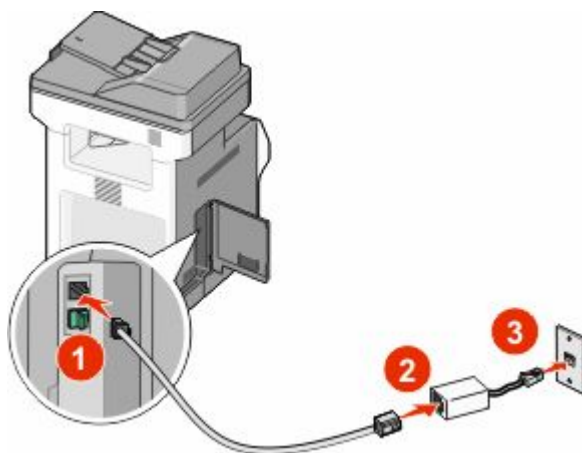**2** Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.

Faxing
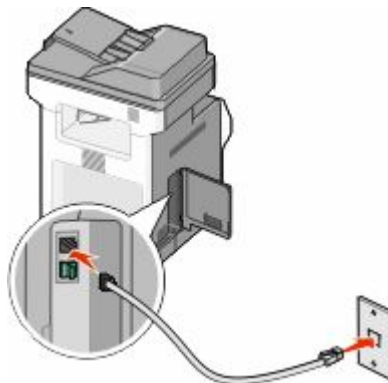
3 Remove the protective plug from the printer EXT port 📞.
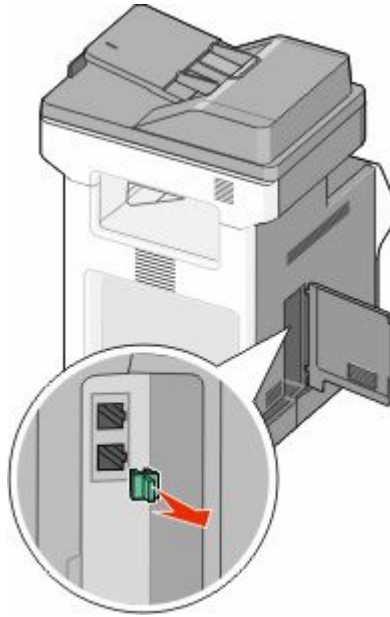
4 Connect your telephone to the computer telephone jack.

5 Connect an additional telephone cord (not provided) from the computer modem to the printer EXT port ▣.
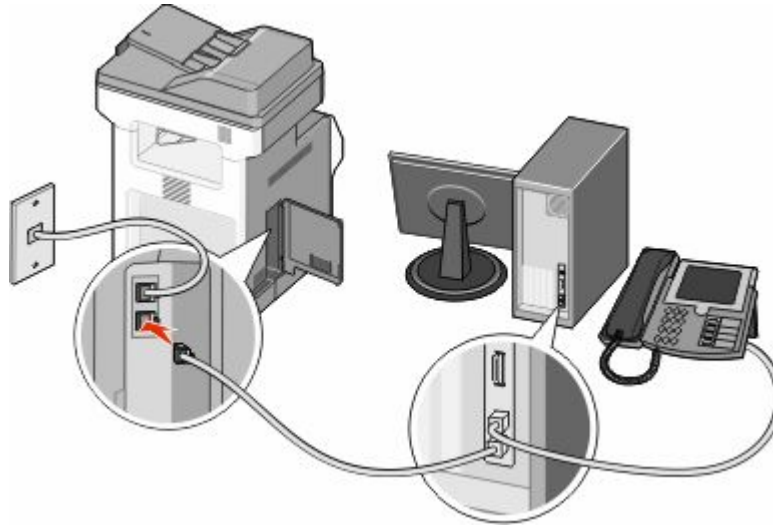
Setting the outgoing fax name and number

To have the designated fax name and fax number printed on outgoing faxes:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **Fax Settings**.

4 Click **Analog Fax Setup**.

5 Click inside the Station Name box, and then enter the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.

6 Click inside the Station Number box, and then enter the printer fax number.

7 Click **Submit**.

Setting the date and time

You can set the date and time so that they are printed on every fax you send. If there is a power failure, you may have to reset the date and time. To set the date and time:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **Set Date and Time**.

4 Click inside the Set Date & Time box, and then enter the current date and time.

5 Click **Submit**.

Turning daylight saving time on or off

The printer can be set to automatically adjust for daylight saving time:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **Set Date and Time**.

4 In the Daylight Savings box, click on one of the following:
> **Yes** turns daylight saving on.
> **No** turns daylight saving off.

5 Click **Submit**.

Sending a fax

Sending a fax using the printer control panel

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Fax**.

4 Enter the fax number or a shortcut using the touch screen or keypad.

To add recipients, touch **Next Number**, and then enter the recipient's telephone number or shortcut number, or search the address book.

> **Note:** To place a dial pause within a fax number, press . The dial pause appears as a comma in the "Fax to" box. Use this feature if you need to dial an outside line first.

5 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax using the computer

Faxing from a computer lets you send electronic documents without leaving your desk. This gives you the flexibility of faxing documents directly from software programs.

Note: In order to perform this function from your computer, you must use the PostScript printer driver for your printer.

1 From your software program, click **File → Print**.

2 From the Print window, select your printer, and then click **Properties**.

3 Choose the **Other Options** tab, and then click **Fax**.

4 Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again.

5 On the Fax screen, type the name and number of the fax recipient.

6 Click **Send**.

Creating shortcuts

Creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

Instead of entering the entire phone number of a fax recipient on the printer control panel each time you want to send a fax, you can create a permanent fax destination and assign a shortcut number. A shortcut can be created to a single fax number or a group of fax numbers.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **Manage Shortcuts**.

> **Note:** A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, get one from your system support person.

4 Click **Fax Shortcut Setup**.

5 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then enter the fax number.

To create a multiple-number shortcut, enter the fax numbers for the group.

> **Note:** Separate each fax number in the group with a semicolon (;).

6 Assign a shortcut number.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

7 Click **Add**.

Creating a fax destination shortcut using the touch screen

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Fax**.

4 Enter the fax number.

To create a group of fax numbers, touch **Next number**, and then enter the next fax number.

5 Touch **Save as Shortcut**.

6 Enter a name for the shortcut.

7 Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**. If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

8 Touch **Fax It** to send the fax, or touch 🏠 to return to the home screen.

Using shortcuts and the address book

Using fax shortcuts

Fax shortcuts are just like the speed dial numbers on a telephone or fax machine. You can assign shortcut numbers when creating permanent fax destinations. Permanent fax destinations or speed dial numbers are created in the Manage Shortcuts link located under Settings on the Embedded Web Server. A shortcut number (1–99999) can contain a single recipient or multiple recipients. By creating a group fax shortcut with a shortcut number, you can quickly and easily fax broadcast information to an entire group.

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not place postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Press ⌗ , and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad.

Using the address book

Note: If the address book feature is not enabled, then contact your system support person.

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Fax**.

4 Touch **Search Address Book**.

5 Using the virtual keyboard, type the name or part of the name of the person whose fax number you want to find. (Do not attempt to search for multiple names at the same time.)

6 Touch **Search**.

7 Touch the name to add it to the "Fax to" list.

8 Repeat steps 4 through 7 to enter additional addresses.

9 Touch **Fax It**.

Customizing fax settings

Changing the fax resolution

Adjusting the resolution setting changes the quality of the fax. Settings range from Standard (fastest speed) to Ultra Fine (slowest speed, best quality).

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Fax**.

4 Use the keypad to enter the fax number.

5 Touch **Options**.

6 From the Resolution area, touch the arrows to change to the resolution you want.

7 Touch **Fax It**.

Making a fax lighter or darker

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Fax**.

4 Use the keypad to enter the fax number.

5 Touch **Options**.

6 From the Darkness area, touch the arrows to adjust the darkness of the fax.

7 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax at a scheduled time

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Fax**.

4 Enter the fax number using the numbers on the touch screen or keypad.

5 Touch **Options**.

6 Touch **Advanced Options**.

7 Touch **Delayed Send**.

> **Note:** If Fax Mode is set to Fax Server, the Delayed Send button will not appear. Faxes waiting for transmission are listed in the Fax Queue.

8 Touch the arrows to adjust the time the fax will be transmitted.

The time is increased or decreased in increments of 30 minutes. If the current time is shown, the left arrow is unavailable.

9 Touch **Done**.

10 Touch **Fax it**.

> **Note:** The document is scanned and then faxed at the scheduled time.

Viewing a fax log

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **Reports**.

4 Click **Fax Job Log** or **Fax Call Log**.

Blocking junk faxes

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **Fax Settings**.

4 Click **Analog Fax Setup**.

5 Click the **Block No Name Fax** option.

This option blocks all incoming faxes that have a private caller ID or no fax station name.

6 In the Banned Fax List field, enter the phone numbers or fax station names of specific fax callers you want to block.

Canceling an outgoing fax

Canceling a fax while the original documents are still scanning

- When using the ADF, touch **Cancel Job** while `Scanning...` appears.
- When using the scanner glass, touch **Cancel Job** while `Scanning...` appears or while `Scan the Next Page` / `Finish the Job` appears.

Canceling a fax after the original documents have been scanned to memory

1 On the home screen, touch **Cancel Jobs**.

The Cancel Jobs screen appears.

2 Touch the job or jobs you want to cancel.

Only three jobs appear on the screen; touch the down arrow until the job you want appears, and then touch the job you want to cancel.

3 Touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

The Deleting Selected Jobs screen appears, the selected jobs are deleted, and then the home screen appears.

Understanding fax options

Original Size

This option opens a screen where you can choose the size of the documents you are going to fax.

- Touch a paper size button to select that size as the Original Size setting. The fax screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- When Original Size is set to Mixed Letter/Legal, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When "Original Size" is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type. Choose from Text, Text/Photo, or Photograph. Color can be turned on or off with any of the Content choices. Content affects the quality and size of your scan.

- **Text**—Emphasizes sharp, black, high-resolution text against a clean, white background
- **Text/Photo**—Used when the original documents are a mixture of text and graphics or pictures
- **Photograph**—Tells the scanner to pay extra attention to graphics and pictures. This setting increases the time it takes to scan, but emphasizes a reproduction of the full dynamic range of tones in the original document. This increases the amount of information saved.
- **Color**—Sets the scan type and output for the fax. Color documents can be scanned and sent to a fax destination.

Sides (Duplex)

This option informs the printer if the original document is simplex (printed on one side) or duplex (printed on both sides). This lets the scanner know what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the fax.

Resolution

This options increases how closely the scanner examines the document you want to fax. If you are faxing a photo, a drawing with fine lines, or a document with very small text, increase the Resolution setting. This will increase the amount of time required for the scan and will increase the quality of the fax output.

- **Standard**—Suitable for most documents
- **Fine**—Recommended for documents with small print
- **Super fine**—Recommended for original documents with fine detail
- **Ultra fine**—Recommended for documents with pictures or photos

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your faxes will turn out in relation to the original document.

Advanced Options

Touching this button opens a screen where you can change Delayed Send, Advanced Imaging, Custom Job, Transmission Log, Scan Preview, Edge Erase, and Advanced Duplex settings.

- **Delayed Send**—Lets you send a fax at a later time or date. After setting up your fax, touch **Delayed Send**, enter the time and date you would like to send your fax, and then touch **Done**. This setting can be especially useful in sending information to fax lines that are not readily available during certain hours, or when transmission times are cheaper.

  Note: If the printer is turned off when the delayed fax is scheduled to be sent, the fax is sent the next time the printer is turned on.

- **Advanced Imaging**—Adjusts Background Removal, Contrast, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, and Mirror Image before you fax the document
- **Custom Job (Job Build)**—Combines multiple scanning jobs into a single job
- **Transmission Log**—Prints the transmission log or transmission error log
- **Scan Preview**—Displays the image before it is included in the fax. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused, and a preview image appears.
- **Edge Erase**—Eliminates smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Advanced Duplex**—Controls how many sides and what orientation an original document has, and whether original documents are bound along the long edge or the short edge

  Note: Some Advanced Duplex options may not be available on all printer models.

Improving fax quality

Question	Tip
When should I use Text mode?	- Use Text mode when text preservation is the main goal of the fax, and preserving images copied from the original document is not a concern. - Text mode is recommended for faxing receipts, carbon copy forms, and documents that contain only text or fine line art.

Question	Tip
When should I use Text/Photo mode?	• Use Text/Photo mode when faxing an original document that contains a mixture of text and graphics. • Text/Photo mode is recommended for magazine articles, business graphics, and brochures.
When should I use Photo mode?	Use Photo mode when faxing photos printed on a laser printer or taken from a magazine or newspaper.

Holding and forwarding faxes

Holding faxes

This option lets you hold received faxes from printing until they are released. Held faxes can be released manually or at a scheduled day or time.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **Fax Settings**.

4 Click **Analog Fax Setup**.

5 Click **Holding Faxes**.

6 Enter a password in the Print Faxes Password box.

7 From the Held Fax Mode menu, select one of the following:

   • **Off**
   • **Always On**
   • **Manual**
   • **Scheduled**

8 If you selected Scheduled, then continue with the following steps. Otherwise, go to step 9.

   a Click **Fax Holding Schedule**.

   b From the Action menu, select **Hold faxes**.

   c From the Time menu, select the time you want the held faxes released.

   d From the Day(s) menu, select the day you want the held faxes released.
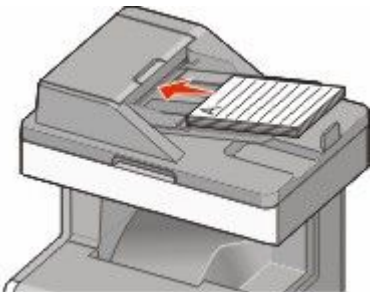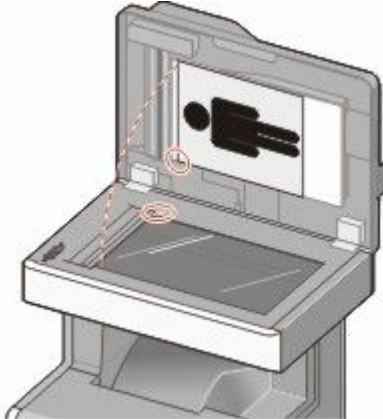
9 Click **Add**.

Forwarding a fax

This option lets you print and forward received faxes to a fax number, e-mail address, FTP site, or LDSS.

1   Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2   Click **Settings**.

3   Click **Fax Settings**.

4   Click **Analog Fax Setup**.

5   From the Fax Forwarding menu, select one of the following:
   - **Print**
   - **Print and Forward**
   - **Forward**

6   From the "Forward to" menu, select one of the following:
   - **Fax**
   - **E-mail**
   - **FTP**
   - **LDSS**
   - **eSF**

7   Click inside the Forward to Shortcut box, and then enter the shortcut number where you want the fax forwarded.

   Note: The shortcut number must be a valid shortcut number for the setting that was selected in the "Forward to" menu.

8   Click **Submit**.

Scanning to an FTP address

ADF	Scanner glass
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a *File Transfer Protocol (FTP)* server. Only one FTP address may be sent to the server at a time.

Once an FTP destination has been configured by your system support person, the name of the destination becomes available as a shortcut number, or it is listed as a profile under the Held Jobs icon. An FTP destination could also be another PostScript printer; for example, a color document can be scanned and then sent to a color printer. Sending a document to an FTP server is similar to sending a fax. The difference is that you are sending the information over your network instead of over the phone line.

Scanning to an FTP address

Scanning to an FTP address using the keypad

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **FTP**.

4 Type the FTP address.

5 Touch **Send It**.

Scanning to an FTP address using a shortcut number

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Press **#**, and then enter the FTP shortcut number.

4 Touch **Send It**.

Scanning to an FTP address using the address book

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **FTP**.

4 Touch **Search Address Book**.

5 Type the name or part of the name you are searching for, and then touch **Search**.

6 Touch the name that you want to add to the To: field.

7 Touch **Send It**.

Creating shortcuts

Instead of entering the entire FTP site address on the printer control panel each time you want to send a document to an FTP server, you can create a permanent FTP destination and assign a shortcut number. There are two methods for creating shortcut numbers: using a computer or using the printer touch screen.

Creating an FTP shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Other Settings, click **Manage Shortcuts**.

> **Note:** A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, get one from your system support person.

4 Click **FTP Shortcut Setup**.

5 Enter the appropriate information into the boxes.

6 Enter a shortcut number.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

7 Click **Add**.

Creating an FTP shortcut using the touch screen

1 On the home screen, touch **FTP**.

2 Type the address of the FTP site.

3 Touch **Save as Shortcut**.

4 Enter a name for the shortcut.

5 Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**. If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

6 Touch **Send It** to start the scan, or touch to return to the home screen.

Understanding FTP options

Original Size

This option opens a screen where you can choose the size of the documents you are going to copy.

- Touch a paper size button to select that size as the Original Size setting. The FTP screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- When "Original Size" is set to Mixed Letter/Legal, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When "Original Size" is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Sides (Duplex)

This option informs the printer if the original document is simplex (printed on one side) or duplex (printed on both sides). This lets the scanner know what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the document.

Orientation

This option tells the printer whether the original document is in portrait or landscape orientation and then changes the Sides and Binding settings to match the original document orientation.

Binding

Tells the printer whether the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Resolution

This option adjusts the output quality of your file. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the file size.

Send As

This option sets the output (PDF, TIFF, JPEG or XPS) for the scanned image.

- **PDF**—Creates a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **Secure PDF**—Creates an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access
- **TIFF**—Creates multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **JPEG**—Creates and attaches a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs
- **XPS**—Creates a single XPS file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third party standalone viewer

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type. Choose from Text, Text/Photo, or Photo. Color can be turned on or off with any of the Content choices. Content affects the quality and size of your FTP file.

- **Text**—Emphasize sharp, black, high-resolution text against a clean, white background
- **Text/Photo**—Used when the original documents are a mixture of text and graphics or pictures
- **Photograph**—Tells the scanner to pay extra attention to graphics and pictures. This setting increases the time it takes to scan, but emphasizes a reproduction of the full dynamic range of tones in the original document. This increases the amount of information saved.
- **Color**—Sets the scan type and output for the FTP file. Color documents can be scanned and sent to an FTP site, computer, e-mail address, or the printer.

Advanced Options

Touching this button opens a screen where you can change Advanced Imaging, Custom Job, Transmission Log, Scan Preview, Edge Erase, and Darkness settings.

- **Advanced Imaging**—Adjusts image output settings before you scan the document
  - **Background Removal**—Adjusts the white portion of the output. Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the white portion.
  - **Color Dropout**—Color dropout is used for form Optical Character Recognition (OCR) processing. Selecting a color eliminates the color from a form, enabling improved OCR capabilities.
  - **Contrast**—Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the contrast.
  - **JPEG Quality**—Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the image compression.
  - **Mirror Image**—Select this box to create a mirror image scan.
  - **Negative Image**—Select this box to create a negative image scan.
  - **Shadow Detail**—Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the visible detail in the shadows.
  - **Scan edge to edge**—Select this box to scan edge to edge.
  - **Sharpness**—Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the sharpness.
- **Custom Job (Job Build)**—Combines multiple scanning jobs into a single job
- **Transmission Log**—Prints the transmission log or transmission error log
- **Scan Preview**—Displays the first page of an image before it is included in the FTP file. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.
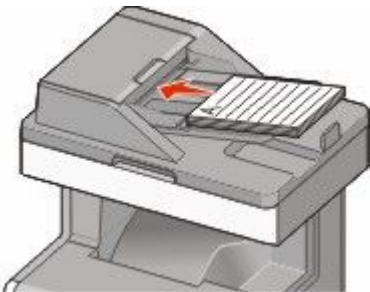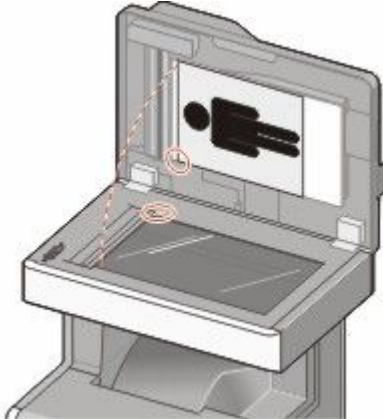
- **Edge Erase**—Eliminates smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Darkness**—Adjusts how light or dark your scanned documents will turn out

Improving FTP quality

Question	Tip
When should I use Text mode?	• Use Text mode when text preservation is the main goal of sending a document to an FTP site, and preserving images copied from the original document is not a concern. • Text mode is recommended for receipts, carbon copy forms, and documents that only contain text or fine line art.
When should I use Text/Photo mode?	• Use Text/Photo mode when sending a document to an FTP site that contains a mixture of text and graphics. • Text/Photo mode is recommended for magazine articles, business graphics, and brochures.
When should I use Photo mode?	Use Photo mode when the original document is composed mostly of photos printed on a laser printer or taken from a magazine or newspaper.

Scanning to a computer or flash drive

ADF	Scanner glass
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a computer or a flash drive. The computer does not have to be directly connected to the printer for you to receive Scan to PC images. You can scan the document back to the computer over the network by creating a scan profile on the computer and then downloading the profile to the printer.

Scanning to a computer

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Scan Profile**.

3 Click **Create**.

4 Select your scan settings, and then click **Next**.

5 Select a location on your computer where you want to save the scanned output file.

6 Enter a scan name.

   The scan name is the name that appears in the Scan Profile list on the display.

7 Click **Submit**.

8 Review the instructions on the Scan Profile screen.

A shortcut number was automatically assigned when you clicked Submit. You can use this shortcut number when you are ready to scan your documents.

a Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

b If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

c Press ![#] , and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad, or touch **Held Jobs** on the home screen, and then touch **Profiles**.

d After you enter the shortcut number, the scanner scans and sends the document to the directory or program you specified. If you touched **Profiles** on the home screen, then locate your shortcut on the list.

9 Return to the computer to view the file.

The output file is saved in the location you specified or launched in the program you specified.

Scanning to a flash drive

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

> **Note:** Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Insert the flash drive into the USB port on the front of the printer.

The Held Jobs screen appears.

4 Touch **Scan to USB drive**.

5 Select the scan settings.

6 Touch **Scan It**.

Understanding scan profile options

Quick Setup

This option lets you select preset formats or customize the scan job settings. You can select one of these settings:

Custom	Photo - Color JPEG
Text - BW PDF	Photo - Color TIFF
Text - BW TIFF	Text/Photo - BW PDF
	Text/Photo - Color PDF

To customize the scan job settings, from the Quick Setup menu, select **Custom**. Then change the scan settings as needed.

Format Type

This option sets the output (PDF, JPEG, TIFF, SECURE PDF, or XPS) for the scanned image.

- **PDF**—Creates a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **JPEG**—Creates and attaches a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs
- **TIFF**—Creates multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **Secure PDF**—Creates an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access
- **XPS**—Creates a single XPS file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third party standalone viewer

Compression

This option sets the format used to compress the scanned output file.

Default Content

This option tells the printer the original document type. Choose from Text, Text/Photo, or Photo. Content affects the quality and size of your scanned file.

Text—Emphasizes sharp, black, high-resolution text against a clean, white background

Text/Photo—Used when the original documents are a mixture of text and graphics or pictures

Photo—Tells the scanner to pay extra attention to graphics and pictures. This setting increases the time it takes to scan, but emphasizes a reproduction of the full dynamic range of tones in the original document. This increases the amount of information saved.

Color

This option tells the printer the color of the original documents. You can select Gray, BW (Black and White), or Color.

Original Size

This option sets the size of the documents you are going to scan. When Original Size is set to Mixed Sizes, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes (letter- and legal-size pages).

Orientation

This option tells the printer whether the original document is in portrait or landscape orientation and then changes the Sides and Binding settings to match the original document orientation.

Sides (Duplex)

This option informs the printer if your original document is simplex (printed on one side) or duplex (printed on both sides). This lets the scanner know what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the document.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your scanned documents will turn out in relation to the original document.

Resolution

This option adjusts the output quality of your file. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the file size.

Advanced Imaging

This option lets you adjust Background Removal, Contrast, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Color Dropout before you scan the document. It also lets you Scan edge to edge, as a Mirror Image, or as a Negative Image.

- **Background Removal**—Adjusts the white portion of the output. Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the white portion.
- **Contrast**—Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the contrast.
- **Shadow Detail**—Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the visible detail in the shadows.
- **Sharpness**—Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the sharpness.
- **Color Dropout**—Color dropout is used for form Optical Character Recognition (OCR) processing. Selecting a color eliminates the color from a form, enabling improved OCR capabilities.
- **Color Dropout Threshold**—Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the amount of color dropout.
- **Scan edge to edge**—Select this box to scan edge to edge.
- **Mirror Image**—Select this box to create a mirror image scan.
- **Negative Image**—Select this box to create a negative image scan.

Improving scan quality

Question	Tip
When should I use Text mode?	- Use Text mode when text preservation is the main goal of the scan, and preserving images copied from the original document is not a concern. - Text mode is recommended for receipts, carbon copy forms, and documents that only contain text or fine line art.
When should I use Text/Photo mode?	- Use Text/Photo mode when scanning an original document that contains a mixture of text and graphics. - Text/Photo mode is recommended for magazine articles, business graphics, and brochures.
When should I use Photo mode?	Use Photo mode when scanning photos printed on a laser printer or taken from a magazine or newspaper.

Understanding printer menus

Menus list

A number of menus are available to make it easy for you to change printer settings. This diagram shows the items available under each menu. To access the menus, touch ![icon] on the home screen.

Supplies	Paper Menu	Reports	Settings
Replace Supply	Default Source	Menu Settings Page	General Settings
Cyan Cartridge	Paper Size/Type	Device Statistics	Copy Settings
Magenta Cartridge	Configure MP	Network Setup Page	Fax Settings
Yellow Cartridge	Substitute Size	Network <x> Setup Page	E-mail Settings
Black Cartridge	Paper Texture	Shortcut List	FTP Settings
Cyan Photoconductor	Paper Weight	Fax Job Log	Flash Drive Menu
Magenta Photoconductor	Paper Loading	Fax Call Log	Print Settings
Yellow Photoconductor	Custom Types	Copy Shortcuts	
Black Photoconductor	Custom Names	E-mail Shortcuts	
Separator pad	Custom Scan Sizes	Fax Shortcuts	
Waste Toner Box	Universal Setup	FTP Shortcuts	
Fuser		Profiles List	
Transfer Module		Netware Setup Page	
		Print Fonts	
		Print Directory	
		Asset Report	

Security	Network/Ports	Help	Manage Shortcuts
Edit Security Setups	Active NIC	Print All Guides	Fax Shortcuts
Miscellaneous Security Setting	Network[1]	Copy Guide	E-mail Shortcuts
Confidential Print	Standard USB	E-mail Guide	FTP Shortcuts
Disk Wiping	Parallel <x>	Fax Guide	Copy Shortcuts
Security Audit Log	Serial <x>	FTP Guide	Profile Shortcuts
Set Date/Time	SMTP Setup	Color Quality	
		Print Defects Guide	
		Information Guide	
		Supplies Guide	

Option Card Menu

A list of installed DLEs (Download Emulators) appears.[2]

[1]Depending on the printer setup, this menu item appears as Standard Network or Network <x>.

[2]This menu appears only when one or more DLEs are installed.

Supplies menu

Menu item	Description
Replace Supply All Photoconductors Cyan Photoconductor Magenta Photoconductor Yellow Photoconductor Black Photoconductor Separator Pad	Provides the option to reset the supply counter for the photoconductor just replaced, or for all photoconductors Select the photoconductor, and then select Yes or No: • Select Yes to reset the supply counter. • Select No to exit.
Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Cartridge Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the toner cartridges
Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Photoconductor Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the cyan, yellow, magenta and black photoconductors
Separator Pad OK Replace	Shows the status of the separator pad
Waste Toner Box Near Full Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the waste toner box
Fuser Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the fuser
Transfer Module Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the transfer module

Paper menu

Default Source menu

Menu item	Description
Default Source Tray <x> MP feeder Manual paper Manual envelope	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs **Notes:** • From the Paper menu, Configure MP feeder must be set to Cassette for MP feeder to appear as a menu setting. • Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting. • If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the job prints using the linked tray.

Paper Size/Type menu

Menu item	Description
Tray <x> Size A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Legal Letter Executive Oficio (México) Folio Statement Universal	Specifies the paper size loaded in each tray **Notes:** • Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • For trays with automatic size sensing, only the size detected by the hardware appears. • If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the job prints using the linked tray.
Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.	

Menu item	Description
Tray <x> Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Heavy Glossy Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type <x>	Specifies the type of paper loaded in each tray **Notes:** • Plain Paper is the factory default setting for Tray 1. Custom Type <x> is the factory default setting for all other trays. • If available, a user-defined name will appear instead of Custom Type <x>. • Use this menu item to configure automatic tray linking.
MP Feeder Size A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Letter Legal Executive Oficio (México) Folio Statement Universal 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope Other Envelope	Specifies the paper size loaded in the multipurpose tray **Notes:** • From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu setting. • Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.	

Menu item	Description
MP Feeder Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Envelope Rough Envelope Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type <x>	Specifies the type of paper loaded in the multipurpose tray **Notes:** - From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu setting. - Plain paper is the factory default setting.
Manual Paper Size A4 A5 JIS B5 Letter Legal Executive Oficio (México) Folio Statement Universal	Specifies the size of the paper being manually loaded **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Manual Paper Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type <x>	Specifies the type of paper being manually loaded **Note:** Plain paper is the factory default setting.
Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.	

Menu item	Description

Manual Envelope Size
  7 3/4 Envelope
  9 Envelope
  10 Envelope
  DL Envelope
  C5 Envelope
  B5 Envelope
  Other Envelope
	Specifies the size of the envelope being manually loaded
	
	Note: 10 Envelope is the US factory default setting. DL Envelope is the international factory default setting.

Manual Envelope Type
  Envelope
  Rough Envelope
  Custom Type <x>
	Specifies the type of envelope being manually loaded
	
	Note: Envelope is the factory default setting.

Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.	

Configure MP menu

Menu item	Description

Configure MP
  Cassette
  Manual
	Determines when the printer selects paper from the multipurpose feeder
	
	Notes:
	
	- Cassette is the factory default setting.
	- The Cassette setting configures the multipurpose feeder as an automatic paper source.
	- When Manual is selected, the multipurpose feeder can be used only for manual feed print jobs.

Substitute Size menu

Menu item	Description

Substitute Size
  Off
  Statement/A5
  Letter/A4
  All Listed
	Substitutes a specified paper size if the requested paper size is not available
	
	Notes:
	
	- All Listed is the factory default setting. All available substitutions are allowed.
	- The Off setting indicates no size substitutions are allowed.
	- Setting a substitution lets the job print without a Change Paper message appearing.

Paper Texture menu

Menu item	Description
Plain Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Card Stock Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the card stock loaded in a specific tray **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if card stock is supported.
Transparency Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the transparencies loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Recycled Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the recycled paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Glossy Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Labels Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the labels loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Vinyl Labels Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the labels loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Bond Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Rough is the factory default setting.
Envelope Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Rough Envelope Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Rough is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Colored Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Light Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Texture Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Rough is the factory default setting.
Custom <x> Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the custom paper loaded in a specific tray **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.

Paper Weight menu

Menu item	Description
Plain Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Card Stock Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the card stock loaded in a specific tray **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if card stock is supported.
Transparency Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the transparencies loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Recycled Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the recycled paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Glossy Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Weight Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Heavy is the factory default setting.
Labels Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the labels loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Vinyl Labels Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of vinyl labels loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Bond Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Envelope Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough Envelope Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Heavy is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Letterhead Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Colored Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Light Weight Light	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Light is the factory default setting.
Heavy Weight Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Heavy is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded in a specific tray **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Custom <x> Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the custom paper loaded in a specific tray **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.

Paper Loading menu

Menu item	Description
Recycled Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Recycled as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Glossy Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Glossy as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Notes: • Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties. • If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided jobs.	

Menu item	Description
Heavy Glossy Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Heavy Glossy as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Bond Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Bond as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Letterhead as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Preprinted as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Colored Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Colored as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Light Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Light as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Heavy Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Heavy as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Custom <x> Loading Duplex Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all jobs that specify Custom <x> as the paper type **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Custom <x> Loading is available only if the custom type is supported.

Notes:

- Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties.
- If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided jobs.

Custom Types menu

Menu item	Description

Custom Type <x>
   Paper
   Card Stock
   Transparency
   Glossy
   Labels
   Vinyl Labels
   Envelope
	Associates a paper or specialty media type with a factory default `Custom Type <x>` name or a user-defined Custom Name created from the Embedded Web Server or MarkVision Professional
	
	Notes:
	
	• Paper is the factory default setting.
	• The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose tray in order to print from that source.

Recycled
   Paper
   Card Stock
   Transparency
   Glossy
   Labels
   Vinyl Labels
   Envelope
	Specifies a paper type when the Recycled setting is selected in other menus
	
	Notes:
	
	• Paper is the factory default setting.
	• The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose tray in order to print from that source.

Custom Names menu

Menu item	Definition
Custom Name <x> <none>	Specify a custom name for a paper type. This name replaces a `Custom Type <x>` name in the printer menus.

Custom Scan Sizes menu

Menu item	Description

Custom Scan Size <x>
   Scan Size Name
   Width
      3–14.17 inches (76–360 mm)
   Height
      3–14.17 inches (76–360 mm)
   Orientation
      Landscape
      Portrait
   2 scans per side
      Off
      On
   ADF Pick Roller Force
      User Default
      30%
      40%
      50%
      60%
      70%
      80%
	Specifies a custom scan size name and options. This name replaces a `Custom Scan Size <x>` name in the printer menus.
	
	Notes:
	
	• 8.5 Inches is the US factory default setting for Width. 216 millimeters is the international factory default setting for Width.
	• 14 Inches is the US factory default setting for Height. 356 millimeters is the international factory default setting for Height.
	• Landscape is the factory default setting for Orientation.
	• Off is the factory default setting for 2 scans per side.
	• User Default is the factory default setting for ADF Pick Roller Force.

Universal Setup menu

These menu items are used to specify the height and width of the Universal Paper Size. The Universal Paper Size is a user-defined paper size setting. It is listed with the other paper size settings and includes similar options, such as support for duplex printing and printing multiple pages on one sheet.

Menu item	Description

Units of Measure
   Inches
   Millimeters
	Identifies the units of measure
	
	Notes:
	
	• Inches is the US factory default setting.
	• Millimeters is the international factory default setting.

Portrait Width
   3–8.5 inches
   76–216 mm
	Sets the portrait width
	
	Notes:
	
	• If the width exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum width allowed.
	• 8.5 inches is the US factory default setting. Inches can be increased in 0.01-inch increments.
	• 216 mm is the international factory default setting. Millimeters can be increased in 1-mm increments.

Menu item	Description
Portrait Height 3–14.17 inches 76–360 mm	Sets the portrait height **Notes:** • If the height exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum height allowed. • 14 inches is the US factory default setting. Inches can be increased in 0.01-inch increments. • 356 mm is the international factory default setting. Millimeters can be increased in 1-mm increments.
Feed Direction Short Edge Long Edge	Specifies the feed direction **Notes:** • Short Edge is the factory default setting. • Long Edge appears only if the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported in the tray.

Reports menu

Reports menu

Note: When you select a menu item from the Reports menu, the indicated report prints.

Menu item	Description
Menu Settings Page	Prints a report containing information about paper loaded into trays, installed memory, the total page count, alarms, timeouts, the printer control panel language, the TCP/IP address, the status of supplies, the status of the network connection, and other information
Device Statistics	Prints a report containing printer statistics such as supply information and details about printed pages
Network Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information **Note:** This menu item appears only for network printers or printers connected to print servers.
Network <x> Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information **Notes:** • This menu item is available when more than one network option is installed. • This menu item appears only for network printers or printers connected to print servers.

Menu item	Description
Wireless Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the wireless network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information
	Notes:
	• This menu item is available when a wireless card is installed and Lexmark Document Solutions Suite is enabled.
	• This menu item appears only for network printers or printers connected to print servers.
Shortcut List	Prints a report containing information about configured shortcuts
Fax Job Log	Prints a report containing information about the last 200 completed faxes
Fax Call Log	Prints a report containing information about the last 100 attempted, received, and blocked calls
Copy Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about copy shortcuts
E-mail Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about e-mail shortcuts
Fax Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about fax shortcuts
FTP Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about FTP shortcuts
Profiles List	Prints a list of profiles stored in the printer
NetWare Setup Page	Prints a report containing NetWare-specific information about the network settings
	Note: This menu item appears only for printers with an internal print server installed.
Print Fonts	Prints a report of all the fonts available for the printer language currently set in the printer
Print Directory	Prints a list of all the resources stored on an optional flash memory card or printer hard disk
	Notes:
	• Job Buffer Size must be set to 100%.
	• The optional flash memory or printer hard disk must be installed correctly and working properly.
Asset Report	Prints a report containing asset information including the printer serial number and model name. The report contains text and UPC barcodes that can be scanned into an asset database.

Network/Ports menu

Active NIC menu

Menu item	Description
Active NIC Auto <list of available network cards>	**Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only if an optional network card is installed.

Standard Network or Network <x> menus

Note: Only active ports appear in this menu; all inactive ports are omitted.

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When the Off setting is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. • When the Off setting is used, the printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When the Off setting is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. • When the Off setting is used, the printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Off Auto	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.

Menu item	Description

Network Buffer
    Auto
    3K to <maximum size allowed>
	Sets the size of the network input buffer
	
	Notes:
	
	• Auto is the factory default setting.
	• The value can be changed in 1-K increments.
	• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.
	• To increase the maximum size range for the Network Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and USB buffers.
	• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.

Job Buffering
    Off
    On
    Auto
	Temporarily stores jobs on the printer hard disk before printing. This menu only appears if a formatted disk is installed.
	
	Notes:
	
	• Off is the factory default setting.
	• The On value buffers jobs on the printer hard disk. This menu selection appears only when a formatted disk is installed and is not defective.
	• The Auto setting buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.
	• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.

Mac Binary PS
    On
    Off
    Auto
	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs
	
	Notes:
	
	• Auto is the factory default setting.
	• The Off setting filters print jobs using the standard protocol.
	• The On setting processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.

Std Network Setup
    Reports or Network Reports
    Network Card
    TCP/IP
    IPv6
    AppleTalk
    NetWare
    LexLink
Net <x> Setup
    Reports or Network Reports
    Network Card
    TCP/IP
    IPv6
    Wireless
    AppleTalk
    NetWare
    LexLink
	For descriptions and settings of the network setup menus, see the following:
	
	• "Network Reports menu" on page 158
	• "Network Card menu" on page 160
	• "TCP/IP menu" on page 159
	• "IPv6 menu" on page 160
	• "Wireless menu" on page 161
	• "AppleTalk menu" on page 161
	• "NetWare menu" on page 162
	• "LexLink menu" on page 163
	
	Note: The Wireless menu appears only when the printer is connected to a wireless network.

SMTP Setup menu

Use the following menu to configure the SMTP server.

Menu item	Description
Primary SMTP Gateway **Primary SMTP Gateway Port** **Secondary SMTP Gateway** **Secondary SMTP Gateway Port**	Specifies SMTP server port information **Note:** 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
SMTP Timeout 5–30	Specifies the amount of time in seconds before the server stops trying to send the e-mail **Note:** 30 seconds is the factory default setting.

Reply Address
Use SSL
   Disabled
   Negotiate
   Required
	Specifies server information. This is a required item.
	
	Notes:
	
	• The message box has a limitation of 512 characters.
	• Disabled is the factory default setting for Use SSL.

SMTP Server Authentication
   No authentication required
   Login / Plain
   CRAM-MD5
   Digest-MD5
   NTLM
   Kerberos 5
	Specifies the type of user authentication required for scan to e-mail privileges
	
	Note: "No authentication required" is the factory default setting.

Device-Initiated E-mail
   None
   Use Device SMTP Credentials
User-Initiated E-mail
   None
   Use Device SMTP Credentials
   Use Session User ID and Password
   Use Session E-mail address and Password
   Prompt User
Device Userid
Device password
Kerberos 5 Realm
NTLM Domain
	Specifies server information
	
	Notes:
	
	• The message boxes have a limitation of 512 characters.
	• None is the factory default setting for Device-Initiated E-mail and User-Initiated E-mail.

Network Reports menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports → Standard Network or **Network <x> → Std Network Setup** or **Net <x> Setup → Reports** or **Network Reports**

Menu item	Description
Print Setup Page **Print NetWare Setup Page**	Prints a report containing information about the current network setup **Notes:** - The Setup Page contains information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address. - The NetWare Setup Page menu item appears only on models that support NetWare and shows information about NetWare settings.

TCP/IP menu

Use the following menu items to view or set the TCP/IP information.

Note: This menu is available only for network models or printers attached to print servers.

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports → Standard Network or **Network <x> → Std Network Setup** or **Net <x> Setup → TCP/IP**

Menu item	Description
Activate On Off	Activates TCP/IP **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
View Hostname	Lets you view the current TCP/IP hostname **Note:** This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
IP Address	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP Address **Note:** Manually setting the IP address sets the Enable DHCP and Enable Auto IP settings to Off. It also sets Enable BOOTP and Enable RARP to Off on systems that support BOOTP and RARP.
Netmask	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP Netmask
Gateway	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP Gateway
Enable DHCP On Off	Specifies the DHCP address and parameter assignment setting
Enable RARP On Off	Specifies the RARP address assignment setting **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Enable BOOTP On Off	Specifies the BOOTP address assignment setting **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
AutoIP Yes No	Specifies the Zero Configuration Networking setting **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Enable FTP/TFTP Yes No	Enables the built-in FTP server, which allows you to send files to the printer using the File Transfer Protocol. **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable HTTP Server Yes No	Enables the built-in web server (Embedded Web Server). When enabled, the printer can be monitored and managed remotely using a web browser. **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
WINS Server Address	Lets you view or change the current WINS Server Address
DNS Server Address	Lets you view or change the current DNS Server Address

Network Card menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports → Standard Network or **Network <x> → Std Network Setup** or **Net <x> Setup → Network Card**

Menu item	Description
View Card Status Connected Disconnected	Lets you view the connection status of the Network Card
View Card Speed	Lets you view the speed of a currently active network card
Network Address UAA LAA	Lets you view the network addresses
Job Timeout 0-225 seconds	Sets the amount of time in seconds that a network print job can take before it is canceled **Notes:** • 90 seconds is the factory default setting. • A setting value of 0 disables the timeout. • If a value of 1–9 is selected, then the setting is saved as 10.
Banner Page Off On	Allows the printer to print a banner page. **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

IPv6 menu

Use the following menu items to view or set the Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6) information.

Note: This menu is available only for network models or printers attached to print servers.

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports → Standard Network or **Network <x> → Std Network Setup** or **Net <x> Setup → IPv6**

Menu item	Description
Enable IPv6 On Off	Enables IPv6 in the printer **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Auto Configuration On Off	Specifies whether the network adapter accepts the automatic IPv6 address configuration entries provided by a router **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
View Hostname **View Address** **View Router Address**	Lets you view the current setting **Note:** These settings can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Enable DHCPv6 On Off	Enables DHCPv6 in the printer **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Wireless menu

Use the following menu items to view or configure the wireless internal print server settings.

Note: This menu is available only for models connected to a wireless network.

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports → Network <x> → Net <x> Setup → Wireless

Menu item	Description
Network Mode Infrastructure Ad hoc	Specifies the network mode **Notes:** • Infrastructure mode lets the printer access a network using an access point. • Ad hoc is the factory default setting. Ad hoc mode configures the printer for wireless networking directly between it and a computer.
Compatibility 802.11n 802.11b/g 802.11b/g/n	Specifies the wireless standard for the wireless network
Choose Network <list of available networks>	Lets you select an available network for the printer to use
View Signal Quality	Lets you view the quality of the wireless connection
View Security Mode	Lets you view the encryption method for the wireless connection. "Disabled" indicates that the wireless network is not encrypted.

AppleTalk menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports → Standard Network or **Network <x> → Std Network Setup** or **Net <x> Setup → AppleTalk**

Menu item	Description
Activate On Off	Activates AppleTalk support **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
View Name	Shows the assigned AppleTalk name **Note:** The name can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
View Address	Shows the assigned AppleTalk address **Note:** The address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Set Zone <list of zones available on the network>	Provides a list of AppleTalk zones available on the network **Note:** The default setting is the default zone for the network. If no default zone exists, the zone marked with an * is the default setting.

NetWare menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports → Standard Network or **Network <x> → Std Network Setup** or **Net <x> Setup → NetWare**

Menu item	Description
Activate Yes No	Activates NetWare support **Note:** No is the factory default setting.
View Login Name	Lets you view the assigned NetWare login name **Note:** This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Print Mode	Lets you view the assigned NetWare print mode **Note:** This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Network Number	Lets you view the assigned NetWare network number **Note:** This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Select SAP Frames Ethernet 802.2 Ethernet 802.3 Ethernet Type II Ethernet SNAP	Enables the Ethernet frame type setting **Note:** On is the factory default setting for all menu items.
Packet Burst Yes No	Reduces network traffic by allowing the transfer and acknowledgement of multiple data packets to and from the NetWare server **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
NSQ/GSQ Mode Yes No	Specifies the NSQ/GSQ Mode setting **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.

LexLink menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports → Standard Network or **Network <x> → Std Network Setup** or **Net <x> Setup → LexLink menu**

Menu item	Description
Activate On Off	Activates LexLink support **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
View Nickname	Lets you view the assigned LexLink nickname **Note:** The LexLink nickname can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.

Standard USB and USB <x> menus

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When the Off setting is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. • When the Off setting is used, the printer uses PostScript emulation if the PS Smartswitch setting is On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PS SmartSwitch setting is Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When the Off setting is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. • When the Off setting is used, the printer uses PCL emulation if the PCL Smartswitch setting is On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PCL SmartSwitch setting is Off.
NPA Mode On Off Auto	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Changing this setting from the control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.

Menu item	Description
USB Buffer Disabled Auto 3k to <maximum size allowed>	Sets the size of the USB input buffer **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • The Disabled setting turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the disk are printed before normal processing is resumed. • The USB buffer size value can be changed in 1k increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether the Resource Save setting is On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the USB Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.
Job Buffering On Off Auto	Temporarily stores jobs on the printer hard disk before printing **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The On setting buffers jobs on the printer hard disk. • The Auto setting buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.
Mac Binary PS On Off Auto	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • The Off setting filters print jobs using the standard protocol. • The On setting processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
ENA Address	Sets the network address information for an external print server that is attached to the printer using a USB cable **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Netmask	Sets the netmask information for an external print server that is attached to the printer using a USB cable **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Gateway	Sets the gateway information for an external print server that is attached to the printer using a USB cable **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

Parallel <x> menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When the Off setting is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. • When the Off setting is used, the printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When the Off setting is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. • When the Off setting is used, the printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode On Off Auto	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.
Parallel Buffer Disabled Auto 3k to <maximum size allowed>	Sets the size of the parallel input buffer **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • The Disabled setting turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the disk are printed before normal processing is resumed. • The parallel buffer size setting can be changed in 1k increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the Parallel Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the USB, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.

Menu item	Description
Job Buffering Off On Auto	Temporarily stores jobs on the printer hard disk before printing **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The Off setting does not buffer print jobs to the printer hard disk. • The On setting buffers jobs on the printer hard disk. • The Auto setting buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.
Advanced Status On Off	Enables bidirectional communication through the parallel port **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • The Off setting disables parallel port negotiation.
Parallel Protocol Standard Fastbytes	Specifies the parallel port protocol **Notes:** • Fastbytes is the factory default setting. It provides compatibility with most existing parallel ports and is the recommended setting. • The Standard setting tries to resolve parallel port communication problems.
Honor Init On Off	Determines whether or not the printer honors printer hardware initialization requests from the computer **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The computer requests initialization by activating the Init signal from the parallel port. Many personal computers activate the Init signal each time the computer is turned on.
Parallel Mode 2 On Off	Determines whether or not the parallel port data is sampled on the leading or trailing edge of strobe **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Mac Binary PS On Off Auto	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • The Off setting filters print jobs using the standard protocol. • The On setting processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
ENA Address <xxx>.<xxx>.<xxx>.<xxx>	Sets the network address information for an external print server that is attached to the printer using a USB cable **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

Menu item	Description
ENA Netmask <xxx>.<xxx>.<xxx>.<xxx>	Sets the netmask information for an external print server that is attached to the printer using a USB cable **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA gateway <xxx>.<xxx>.<xxx>.<xxx>	Sets the gateway information for an external print server that is attached to the printer using a USB cable **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

Serial <x> menu

Menu item	Description

PCL SmartSwitch
    On
    Off
	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language
	
	Notes:
	
	• On is the factory default setting.
	• When the Off setting is used, the printer does not examine incoming data.
	• When the Off setting is used, the printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.

PS SmartSwitch
    On
    Off
	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language
	
	Notes:
	
	• On is the factory default setting.
	• When the Off setting is used, the printer does not examine incoming data.
	• When the Off setting is used, the printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.

NPA Mode
    On
    Off
    Auto
	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol
	
	Notes:
	
	• Auto is the factory default setting.
	• When the On setting is used, the printer performs NPA processing. If the data is not in NPA format, it is rejected as bad data.
	• When the Off setting is used, the printer does not perform NPA processing.
	• When the Auto setting is used, the printer examines data, determines the format, and then processes it appropriately.
	• Changing this setting from the control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.

Menu item	Description
Serial Buffer Disabled Auto 3k to <maximum size allowed>	Sets the size of the serial input buffer **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • The Disabled setting turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the disk are printed before normal processing is resumed. • The serial buffer size setting can be changed in 1k increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the Serial Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	Temporarily stores jobs on the printer hard disk before printing **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The Off setting does not buffer print jobs to the hard disk. • The On setting buffers jobs on the printer hard disk. • The Auto setting buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is updated.
Serial Protocol DTR DTR/DSR XON/XOFF XON/XOFF/DTR XONXOFF/DTRDSR	Selects the hardware and software handshaking settings for the serial port **Notes:** • DTR is the factory default setting. • DTR/DSR is a hardware handshaking setting. • XON/XOFF is a software handshaking setting. • XON/XOFF/DTR and XON/XOFF/DTR/DSR are combined hardware and software handshaking settings.
Robust XON On Off	Determines whether or not the printer communicates availability to the computer **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies only to the serial port if Serial Protocol is set to XON/XOFF.

Menu item	Description
Baud 　1200 　2400 　4800 　9600 　19200 　38400 　57600 　115200 　138200 　172800 　230400 　345600	Specifies the rate at which data can be received through the serial port **Notes:** • 9600 is the factory default setting. • 138200, 172800, 230400, and 345600 baud rates are only displayed in the Standard Serial menu. These settings do not appear in the Serial Option 1, Serial Option 2, or Serial Option 3 menus.
Data Bits 　7 　8	Specifies the number of data bits that are sent in each transmission frame **Note:** 8 is the factory default setting.
Parity 　Even 　Odd 　None 　Ignore	Sets the parity for serial input and output data frames **Note:** None is the factory default setting.
Honor DSR 　On 　Off	Determines whether the printer uses the DSR Signal. DSR is a handshaking signal used by most serial cables. **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The serial port uses DSR to distinguish data sent by the computer from data created by electrical noise in the serial cable. The electrical noise can cause stray characters to print. Select **On** to prevent stray characters from printing.

Security menu

Miscellaneous menu

Menu item	Description
Panel Logins Login failures Failure time frame Lockout time Login timeout	Limits the number and time frames of failed login attempts from the printer control panel before *all* users are locked out **Notes:** • "Login failures" specifies the number of failed login attempts before users are locked out. Settings range from 1–50. 3 attempts is the factory default setting. • "Failure time frame" specifies the time frame during which failed login attempts can be made before users are locked out. Settings range from 1–60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. • "Lockout time" specifies how long users are locked out after exceeding the login failures limit. Settings range from 0–60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. 0 indicates the printer does not impose a lockout time. • "Login timeout" specifies how long the printer remains idle on the Home screen before automatically logging the user off. Settings range from 1–900 seconds. 300 seconds is the factory default setting.
Remote Logins Login failures Failure time frame Lockout time Login timeout	Limits the number and time frames of failed login attempts from a computer before *all* remote users are locked out **Notes:** • "Login failures" specifies the number of failed login attempts before users are locked out. Settings range from 1–50. 3 attempts is the factory default setting. • "Failure time frame" specifies the time frame during which failed login attempts can be made before users are locked out. Settings range from 1–60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. • "Lockout time" specifies how long a user is locked out after exceeding the login failures limit. Settings range from 0–60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. 0 indicates the printer does not impose a lockout time. • "Login timeout" specifies how long the remote interface remains idle before automatically logging the user off. Settings range from 1–900 seconds. 300 seconds is the factory default setting.

Confidential Print menu

Menu item	Description
Max Invalid PIN Off 2–10	Limits the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered **Notes:** • Off is the default setting. • This menu item appears only if a printer hard disk is installed. • Once a limit is reached, the jobs for that user name and that PIN are deleted.

Menu item	Description
Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Limits the amount of time a confidential job stays in the printer before it is deleted **Notes:** • Off is the default setting. • If the Job Expiration setting is changed while confidential jobs reside on the printer RAM or printer hard disk, the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value. • If the printer is turned off, all confidential jobs held in printer RAM are deleted.

Disk Wiping menu

Menu item	Description
Automatic Wiping Off On	Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data that *is not* currently in use by the file system from the printer hard disk. All permanent data on the printer hard disk is preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs. Automatic Wiping marks all disk space used by a previous job and does not permit the file system to reuse this space until it has been sanitized. Only Automatic Wiping enables users to activate disk wiping without having to take the printer offline for an extended amount of time. **Notes:** • This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. • Off is the default setting. • Due to the large amount of resources required for Automatic Wiping, activating this option may decrease printer performance, especially if the printer requires hard disk space faster than it can be wiped and returned to service.
Manual Wiping Start now Do not start now	Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data that *is not* currently in use by the file system from the printer hard disk. All permanent data on the printer hard disk is preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs. Manual Wiping overwrites all disk space that has been used to hold data from a print job that has been processed (i.e. printed). This type of wipe *does not* erase any information related to an unprocessed print job. **Notes:** • This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. • "Do not start now" is the default setting. • If the Disk Wiping access control is activated, then a user must successfully authenticate and have the required authorization in order to initiate the disk wipe.

Menu item	Description

Automatic Method
    Single pass
    Multiple pass
	Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data that *is not* currently in use by the file system from the printer hard disk. All permanent data on the printer hard disk is preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.
	
	Notes:
	
	• This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.
	• Single pass is the default setting.
	• Highly confidential information should be wiped using the Multiple pass method *only*.

Manual Method
    Single pass
    Multiple pass
	Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data that *is not* currently in use by the file system from the printer hard disk. All permanent data on the printer hard disk is preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.
	
	Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without first having to wipe it.
	
	Notes:
	
	• This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.
	• Single pass is the default setting.
	• Highly confidential information should be wiped using the Multiple Pass method *only*.

Scheduled Method
    Single pass
    Multiple pass
	Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data that *is not* currently in use by the file system from the printer hard disk. All permanent data on the printer hard disk is preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.
	
	Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without first having to wipe it.
	
	Notes:
	
	• This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.
	• Single pass is the default setting.
	• Highly confidential information should be wiped using the Multiple Pass method *only*.
	• Scheduled wipes are initiated *without* displaying a user warning or confirmation message.

Security Audit Log menu

Menu item	Description
Export Log	Enables an authorized user to export the security log **Notes:** • To export the log from the printer control panel, a flash drive must be attached to the printer. • From the Embedded Web Server, the log can be downloaded to a computer.

Menu item	Description
Delete Log Delete now Do not delete	Specifies whether audit logs are deleted **Note:** Delete Now is the factory default setting.
Configure Log Enable Audit Enable Remote Syslog Remote Syslog Facility Severity of events to log	Specifies whether and how the audit logs are created **Note:** Factory default settings enable the security audit log.

Set Date/Time menu

Menu item	Description
View Date/Time	Lets you view the current date and time settings for the printer
Set Date/Time <input date/time>	**Note:** Date/Time is set in YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM format.
Time Zone <list of time zones>	**Note:** GMT is the factory default setting.
Observe DST On Off	**Note:** On is the factory default setting and uses the applicable Daylight Saving Time associated with the Time Zone setting.
Enable NTP On Off	Enables Network Time Protocol, which synchronizes the clocks of devices on a network **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Settings menu

General Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Display Language English Francais Deutsch Italiano Espanol Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Portuguese Suomi Russian Polski Magyar Turkce Cesky Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Korean Japanese	Sets the language of the text appearing on the display **Note:** All languages may not be available for all printers.
Eco-Mode Off Energy Energy/Paper Paper	Minimizes the use of energy, paper, or specialty media **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. Off resets the printer to its factory default settings. • The Energy setting minimizes the power used by the printer. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not. • Paper minimizes the amount of paper and specialty media needed for a print job. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not. • Energy/Paper minimizes the use of power and of paper and specialty media.
ADF Loaded Beep Enabled Disabled	Specifies whether the ADF emits a beep when paper is loaded **Note:** Disabled is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Quiet Mode Off (Image/Photo) On (Text/Graphics)	Reduces the amount of noise produced by the printer **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. This setting supports the performance specifications for your printer. • On configures the printer to produce as little noise as possible. This setting is best suited for printing text and line graphics. • For optimal printing of color-rich documents, set Quiet Mode to Off. • Selecting **Photo** from the driver may disable Quiet Mode and provide better print quality and full speed printing.
Run Initial setup Yes No	Instructs the printer to run the setup wizard **Notes:** • Yes is the factory default setting. • After completing the setup wizard by selecting Done at the Country select screen, the default becomes No.

Menu item	Description

Keyboard
  Keyboard Type
    English
    Francais
    Francais Canadien
    Deutsch
    Italiano
    Espanol
    Dansk
    Norsk
    Nederlands
    Svenska
    Suomi
    Portuguese
    Russian
    Polski
    Swiss German
    Swiss French
    Turkce
    Korean
  Custom Key <x>
  Accents/Symbols Tab
    On
    Off
  Russian/Polish Tab
    On
    Off
  Korean Tab
    On
    Off
	Specifies a language and custom key information for the printer control panel keyboard. The additional tabs enable access to accent marks and symbols from the printer control panel keyboard.

Paper Sizes
  US
  Metric
	Notes:
	
	• Initial setting is determined by your Country selection in the initial setup wizard.
	• Changing this setting also changes the Units of Measurement setting in the Universal Setup menu and the default for each input source in the Paper Size/Paper Type menu.

Scan to PC Port Range <port range>	Specifies a valid port range for printers behind a port blocking firewall. The valid ports are specified by two sets of numbers separated by a semicolon. **Note:** 9751:12000 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description

Displayed Information
Left side
Right side
Custom Text <x>
    <text entry>
<color> Cartridge
    Display When Supply Registers
        Off
        Early Warning
        Low
        Nearly Low
        Replace
    Type of Message to Display
        Default
        Alternate
    Default Message
        <text entry>
    Alternate Message
        <text entry>
	Specifies what is displayed on the upper left and right corners of the home screen
	
	For the Left side and Right side options, choose from the following options:
	    None
	    IP Address
	    Hostname
	    Contact Name
	    Location
	    Date/Time
	    mDNS/DDNS Service Name
	    Zero Configuration Name
	    Cartridge Level
	    Custom Text <x>
	
	Notes:
	
	- IP Address is the factory default setting for Left side.
	- Date/Time is the factory default setting for Right side.
	- Off is the factory default setting for Display When Supply Registers.
	- Default is the factory default setting for Type of Message to Display.

Displayed Information (continued)
Paper Jam
Load Paper
Service Errors
	The displayed information for Paper Jam, Load Paper, and Service Errors can be customized with the following options:
	    Activate
	        Yes
	        No
	    Type of Message to Display
	        Default
	        Alternate
	    Default Message
	        <text entry>
	    Alternate Message
	        <text entry>
	
	Notes:
	
	- No is the factory default setting for Activate.
	- Default is the factory default setting for Type of Message to Display.

Menu item	Description
Home screen customization Change Language Copy Copy Shortcuts Fax Fax Shortcuts E-mail E-mail Shortcuts FTP FTP Shortcuts Search Held Jobs Held Jobs USB Drive Profiles Bookmarks Jobs by user	Additional buttons can be added to the Home screen, and default buttons can be removed. Available selections for each button are: 　Display 　Do Not Display
Date Format MM-DD-YYYY DD-MM-YYYY YYYY-MM-DD	Formats the printer date
Time Format 12 hour A.M./P.M. 24 hour clock	Formats the printer time
Screen Brightness 20–100	Specifies the brightness of the printer control panel screen
One Page Copy On Off	Sets the copies from the scanner glass to only one page at a time **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Output Lighting 　Standard Bin LED 　　Normal/Standby Mode 　　　Bright 　　　Dim 　　　Off 　　Power Saver 　　　Bright 　　　Dim 　　　Off 　Output Option Bin LEDs 　　Normal/Standby Mode 　　　Bright 　　　Dim 　　　Off 　　Power Saver 　　　Bright 　　　Dim 　　　Off	Sets the amount of light from the standard bin or an optional output bin **Notes:** - In Normal/Standby Mode, the factory default setting is Bright. - In Power Saver Mode, the factory default is Dim.
Show Bookmarks 　On 　Off	Specifies whether bookmarks are displayed from the Held Jobs area **Note:** On is the factory default setting. When On is selected, bookmarks appear in the Held Jobs area.
Allow Background Removal 　On 　Off	Specifies whether image background removal is allowed during copy, fax, e-mail, FTP, or scan to USB **Note:** On is the factory default setting. The background of the image will be removed.
Allow Custom Job Scans 　On 　Off	Lets you scan multiple jobs to one file **Note:** On is the factory default setting. If On is selected, the Allow Custom Job Scans setting can be enabled for specific jobs.
Scanner Jam Recovery 　Job level 　Page level	Specifies how a scanned job should be reloaded if a paper jam occurs in the ADF **Notes:** - If Job level is selected, the entire job must be rescanned if any pages jam. - If Page level is selected, rescan from the jammed page forward.
Web Page Refresh Rate 　30–300	Specifies the number of seconds between Embedded Web Server refreshes **Note:** 120 seconds is the factory default setting.
Contact Name	Specifies a contact name for the printer **Note:** The contact name will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.

Menu item	Description
Location	Specifies the location of the printer **Note:** The location will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.

Alarms
   Alarm Control
   Cartridge Alarm
	Sets an alarm to sound when the printer requires operator intervention
	Available selections for each alarm type are:
	   Off
	   Single
	   Continuous
	
	Notes:
	
	• Single is the factory default setting for Alarm Control. Single sounds three quick beeps.
	• Off is the factory default setting for Cartridge Alarm. Off means no alarm will sound.
	• Continuous repeats three beeps every 10 seconds.

Timeouts
   Standby Mode
     Disabled
     2–240
	Specifies the number of minutes of inactivity before the system enters a lower power state
	
	Note: 15 minutes is the factory default setting.

Timeouts
   Power Saver
     1–240
	Sets the amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it goes into a reduced power state
	
	Notes:
	
	• 30 minutes is the factory default setting.
	• Lower settings conserve more energy, but may require longer warm-up times.
	• Select the lowest setting if the printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting or you notice lights flickering in the room.
	• Select a high setting if the printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to print with minimum warm-up time.

Timeouts
   Screen Timeout
     15–300
	Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits before returning the printer display to a `Ready` state
	
	Note: 30 seconds is the factory default setting.

Timeouts
   Print Timeout
     Disabled
     1–255
	Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits to receive an end-of-job message before canceling the remainder of the print job
	
	Notes:
	
	• 90 seconds is the factory default setting.
	• When the timer expires, any partially printed page still in the printer is printed, and then the printer checks to see if any new print jobs are waiting.
	• Print Timeout is available only when using PCL emulation. This setting has no effect on PostScript emulation print jobs.

Understanding printer menus

Menu item	Description
Timeouts Wait Timeout Disabled 15–6553515	Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits for additional data before canceling a print job **Notes:** • 40 seconds is the factory default setting. • Wait Timeout is available only when the printer is using PostScript emulation. This setting has no effect on PCL emulation print jobs.
Timeouts Job Hold Timeout 5–255	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources and continues to print other jobs in the print queue **Notes:** • 30 seconds is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only when a hard disk is installed.
Print Recovery Auto Continue Disabled 5–255	Lets the printer automatically continue printing from certain offline situations when not resolved within the specified time period **Note:** Disabled is the factory default setting.
Print Recovery Jam Recovery Auto	Specifies whether the printer reprints jammed pages **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks. • On sets the printer to always reprint jammed pages. • Off sets the printer to never reprint jammed pages.
Print Recovery Page Protect Off On	Lets the printer successfully print a page that may not have printed otherwise **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. Off prints a partial page when there is not enough memory to print the whole page. • On sets the printer to process the whole page so that the entire page prints.
Factory Defaults Do Not Restore Restore Now	Returns the printer settings to the factory default settings **Notes:** • Do Not Restore is the factory default setting. Do Not Restore keeps the user-defined settings. • Restore Now returns all printer settings to the factory default settings except Network/Ports menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.

Copy Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Content Text/Photo Photograph Printed Image Text	Specifies the type of content contained in the copy job **Notes:** • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the original documents are a mixture of text and graphics or pictures. • Photograph tells the scanner to pay extra attention to graphics and pictures. This setting increases the time it takes to scan, but emphasizes a reproduction of the full dynamic range of tones in the original document. This increases the amount of information saved. • Printed Image is used when jobs are composed primarily of images. Printed Image converts the images to halftone. Halftoning makes a grayscale or color image printable by transforming it to a pattern of small spots with a limited number of colors. • Text emphasizes sharp, black, high-resolution text against a clean, white background.
Color On Off	Specifies whether color is printed from a scan job **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Allow color copies On Off	Specifies whether copies are printed in color **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided to 1 sided 1 sided to 2 sided 2 sided to 1 sided 2 sided to 2 sided	Specifies whether an original document is duplex (two-sided) or simplex (one-sided), and then specifies whether the copy should be duplex or simplex **Notes:** • **1 sided to 1 sided**—The original page has printing on one side. The copied page will have printing on one side. • **1 sided to 2 sided**—The original page has printing on one side. The copied page will have printing on both sides. For example, if the original is six sheets, the copy is three sheets with printing on both sides. • **2 sided to 1 sided**—The original page has printing on both sides. The copied page will have printing on only one side. For example, if the original draft is three sheets of paper with an image on each side of each sheet, then the copy is six sheets with only one image on one side of each sheet. • **2 sided to 2 sided**—The original page has printing on both sides. The copy mimics the original exactly.
Paper Saver Off 2 on 1 Portrait 2 on 1 Landscape 4 on 1 Portrait 4 on 1 Landscape	Sets two or four sheets of an original document together on the same page **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Print Page Borders On Off	Specifies whether a border is printed around the edge of the page at the margins **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Collate On Off	Keeps the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when making multiple copies of the job **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size <x> A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Letter/Legal	Specifies the paper size of the original document **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Copy To Source Tray <x> Manual Feeder Auto Size Match	Specifies the paper source for copy jobs **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Transparency Separators On Off	Places a sheet of paper between transparencies **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheets None Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Places a sheet of paper between pages, copies, or jobs based on the value selected **Note:** None is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheet Source Tray <x> Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source the separator sheet prints from **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Specifies the level of darkness for the copy job **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Number of Copies 　1–999	Specifies the number of copies for the copy job **Note:** 1 is the factory default setting.
Header/Footer 　Top left 　　Top left 　　　Off 　　　Date/Time 　　　Page number 　　　Bates number 　　　Custom text 　　Print on 　　　All pages 　　　First page only 　　　All but first page 　　Enter custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the top left of the page **Notes:** - Off is the factory default setting for Top left. - "All pages" is the factory default setting for Print on.
Header/Footer 　Top middle 　　Top middle 　　　Off 　　　Date/Time 　　　Page number 　　　Bates number 　　　Custom text 　　Print on 　　　All pages 　　　First page only 　　　All but first page 　　Enter custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the middle of the page **Notes:** - Off is the factory default setting for Top middle. - "All pages" is the factory default setting for Print on.
Header/Footer 　Top right 　　Top right 　　　Off 　　　Date/Time 　　　Page number 　　　Bates number 　　　Custom text 　　Print on 　　　All pages 　　　First page only 　　　All but first page 　　Enter custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the top right of the page **Notes:** - Off is the factory default setting for Top right. - "All pages" is the factory default setting for Print on.

Menu item	Description

Header/Footer
Bottom left
    Bottom left
        Off
        Date/Time
        Page number
        Bates number
        Custom text
    Print on
        All pages
        First page only
        All but first page
    Enter custom text
	Specifies header/footer information for the bottom left of the page
	
	Notes:
	
	• Off is the factory default setting for Bottom left.
	• "All pages" is the factory default setting for Print on.

Header/Footer
Bottom middle
    Bottom middle
        Off
        Date/Time
        Page number
        Bates number
        Custom text
    Print on
        All pages
        First page only
        All but first page
    Enter custom text
	Specifies header/footer information for the bottom middle of the page
	
	Notes:
	
	• Off is the factory default setting for Bottom middle.
	• "All pages" is the factory default setting for Print on.

Header/Footer
Bottom right
    Bottom right
        Off
        Date/Time
        Page number
        Bates number
        Custom text
    Print on
        All pages
        First page only
        All but first page
    Enter custom text
	Specifies header/footer information for the bottom right of the page
	
	Notes:
	
	• Off is the factory default setting for Bottom right.
	• "All pages" is the factory default setting for Print on.

Menu item	Description
Overlay Off Confidential Copy Draft Urgent Custom	Specifies overlay text that is printed on each page of the copy job **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Custom Overlay	Specifies custom overlay text **Note:** A maximum of 64 characters is allowed.
Allow priority copies On Off	Allows interruption of a print job to copy a page or document **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning On Off	Lets you copy in a single copy job a document that contains mixed paper sizes **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only if a valid printer hard drive is installed.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save custom copy settings as shortcuts **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to +4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Auto Center On Off	Lets you automatically center the copy on the page **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Color Dropout
Color Dropout
  None
  Red
  Green
  Blue
Default Red Threshold
  0–255
Default Green Threshold
  0–255
Default Blue Threshold
  0–255
	Specifies which color to drop during copies, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout
	Notes:
	• None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout.
	• 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.

Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specifies the contrast used for the copy job **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Mirror Image On Off	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image On Off	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to +4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge On Off	Specifies if the original document is scanned edge-to-edge prior to copying **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness of a copy **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.
Sample Copy On Off	Creates a sample copy of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Fax Settings menu

Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu

Analog Fax Setup mode sends the fax job by way of a telephone line.

General Fax Settings

Menu item	Description
Fax Cover Page 　Fax Cover Page 　　Off by default 　　On by default 　　Never Use 　　Always Use 　Include To field 　　On 　　Off 　Include From field 　　On 　　Off 　From 　Include Message field 　　On 　　Off 　Message 　Include Logo 　　On 　　Off 　Include Footer <x> 　　Footer <x>	Configures the fax cover page **Note:** Off is the factory default setting for all Fax Cover Page options.
Station Name	Specifies the name of the fax within the printer
Station Number	Specifies a number associated with the fax
Station ID 　Station Name 　Station Number	Specifies how the fax is identified
Enable Manual Fax 　On 　Off	Sets the printer to fax manually only, which requires a line splitter and a telephone hand set **Notes:** • Use a regular telephone to answer an incoming fax job and to dial a fax number. • Touch **# 0** on the numeric keypad to go directly to the Manual Fax function.
Memory Use 　All receive 　Mostly receive 　Equal 　Mostly sent 　All send	Defines the allocation of non-volatile memory between sending and receiving fax jobs **Notes:** • "All receive" specifies that all the memory is set to receive fax jobs. • "Mostly receive" specifies that most of the memory is set to receive fax jobs. • Equal is the factory default setting. Equal splits the memory for sending and receiving fax jobs into equal amounts. • "Mostly sent" specifies that most of the memory is set to send fax jobs. • "All send" specifies that all the memory is set to send fax jobs.

Menu item	Description
Cancel Faxes Allow Don't Allow	Specifies whether the printer may cancel fax jobs **Note:** If Cancel Faxes is not enabled, it will not appear as an option.
Caller ID FSK DTMF	Specifies type of caller ID being used **Note:** FSK is the factory default setting.
Fax number masking Off From left From right	Specifies the direction from which digits are masked in an outgoing fax number **Note:** The number of characters masked is determined by the "Digits to mask" setting.
Digits to mask 0–58	Specifies the number of digits to mask in an outgoing fax number

Fax Send Settings

Menu item	Description
Resolution Standard Fine Super Fine Ultra Fine	Specifies quality in dots per inch (dpi). A higher resolution gives greater print quality, but it increases the fax transmission time for outgoing faxes. **Note:** Standard is the factory default setting.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size <x> A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Letter/Legal	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • "Long edge" assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). • "Short edge" assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation).
Content Text Text/Photo Photograph	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned to fax **Notes:** • Text is used when the document is mostly text. • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the documents are mostly text or line art. • Photograph is used when the document is a high-quality photograph or inkjet print.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Dial Prefix	Lets you enter a dialing prefix, such as 99. A numeric entry field is provided.
Dialing Prefix Rules Prefix Rule <x>	Establishes a dialing prefix rule
Automatic Redial 0–9	Specifies the number of times the printer tries to send the fax to a specified number **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Redial Frequency 1–200	Specifies the number of minutes between redials
Behind a PABX Off On	Enables switchboard blind dialing without a dial tone
Enable ECM On Off	Enables Error Correction Mode for fax jobs
Enable Fax Scans On Off	Lets you send faxes by scanning at the printer
Driver to fax On Off	Allows driver to fax jobs to be sent by the printer
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save fax numbers as shortcuts in the printer

Menu item	Description
Dial Mode Tone Pulse	Specifies the dialing sound, either as a tone or a pulse
Max Speed 2400 4800 9600 14400 33600	Specifies the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are sent
Custom Job scanning On Off	Lets you scan a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single file
Scan Preview On Off	Specifies whether a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs
Background Removal -4 to +4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Auto Center On Off	Lets you automatically center the fax on the page **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during faxing, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast of the output **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image On Off	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image On Off	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Shadow Detail 0–4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a fax **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge On Off	Specifies if the original document is scanned edge-to-edge prior to faxing **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 0–5	Adjusts the sharpness of a fax **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.
Enable Color Fax Scans On by default Never use Always use Off by default	Enables color faxing **Note:** "Off by default" is the factory default setting.
Auto Convert Color Faxes to Mono Faxes On Off	Converts all outgoing faxes to black and white **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Fax Receive Settings

Menu item	Description
Enable Fax Receive On Off	Allows fax jobs to be received by the printer **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Rings to Answer 1–25	Specifies the number of rings before answering an incoming fax job **Note:** 1 is the factory default setting.
Auto Reduction On Off	Scales an incoming fax job so it fits the size of the paper loaded in the designated fax source **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Paper Source Auto Tray <x> Multi-Purpose Feeder	Specifies the paper source selected to supply paper for the printer to print an incoming fax
Output Bin Standard Bin Bin 1<x>	Specifies an output bin for received faxes **Note:** Bin 1 is available only when the finisher is installed.
Sides (Duplex) On Off	Enables duplex printing (two-sided printing) for incoming fax jobs
Fax Footer On Off	Prints the transmission information at the bottom of each page from a received fax **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Max Speed 　　2400 　　4800 　　9600 　　14400 　　33600	Specifies the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are received
Fax Forwarding 　　Forward 　　Print 　　Print and Forward	Enables forwarding of received faxes to another recipient
Forward to 　　Fax 　　E-mail 　　FTP 　　LDSS 　　eSF	Specifies the type of recipient to which faxes will be forwarded **Note:** This item is available only from the printer Embedded Web Server.
Forward to Shortcut	Lets you enter the shortcut number which matches the recipient type (Fax, E-mail, FPT, LDSS, or eSF)
Block No Name Fax 　　On 　　Off	Enables blocking of incoming faxes sent from devices with no station ID specified
Banned Fax List	Enables the list of banned fax numbers stored in the printer
Holding Faxes 　　Held Fax Mode 　　　　Off 　　　　Always On 　　　　Manual 　　　　Scheduled 　　Fax Holding Schedule	Enables fax holding all of the time or according to a set schedule **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Fax Log Settings

Menu item	Description
Transmission Log 　　Print log 　　Do not print log 　　Print only for error	Enables printing of a transmission log after each fax job
Receive Error Log 　　Print Never 　　Print on Error	Enables printing of a receive error log following a receive error
Auto Print Logs 　　On 　　Off	Enables automatic printing of fax logs **Note:** Logs print after every 200 jobs.

Menu item	Description

Log Paper Source
  Tray <x>
  Manual Feeder
	Selects the source of the paper used for printing logs

Logs Display
  Remote Station Name
  Dialed Number
	Specifies whether printed logs display the dialed number or the station name returned

Enable Job Log
  On
  Off
	Enables access to the Fax Job log

Enable Call Log
  On
  Off
	Enables access to the Fax Call log

Log Output Bin
  Standard Bin
  Bin <x>
	Specifies the output bin where fax logs are printed

Speaker Settings

Menu item	Description

Speaker Mode
  Always Off
  On until Connected
  Always On
	Notes:
	
	• Always Off turns the speaker off.
	• On until Connected is the factory default setting. The speaker is on and issues a noise until the fax connection is made.
	• Always On turns the speaker on.

Speaker Volume
  High
  Low
	Controls the volume setting
	
	Note: High is the factory default setting.

Ringer Volume
  On
  Off
	Controls the fax speaker ringer volume
	
	Note: On is the factory default setting.

Distinctive Rings

Menu item	Description

Single Ring
  On
  Off
	Answers calls with a one-ring pattern
	
	Note: On is the factory default setting.

Double Ring
  On
  Off
	Answers calls with a double-ring pattern
	
	Note: On is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Triple Ring On Off	Answers calls with a triple-ring pattern **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) menu

Fax Server mode sends the fax job to a fax server for transmission.

Fax Server Setup

Menu item	Description
To Format **Reply Address** **Subject** **Message**	Lets you enter the information using the virtual keyboard on the printer touch screen
Primary SMTP Gateway	Specifies SMTP server port information **Note:** 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
Secondary SMTP Gateway	Specifies SMTP server port information **Note:** 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
Image Format PDF (.pdf) XPS (.xps) TIFF (.tif)	Specifies the image type for scan to fax
Content Text Text/Photo Photograph	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned to fax **Notes:** • Text is used when the document is mostly text. • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the documents are mostly text or line art. • Photograph is used when the document is a high-quality photograph or inkjet print.
Fax Resolution Standard Fine Super Fine Ultra Fine	Specifies the resolution level for scan to fax
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image

Menu item	Description
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size <x> A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Letter/Legal	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to fax job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. **Notes:** - On is the factory default setting. - This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Enable Analog Receive On Off	Enables analog fax receive **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

E-mail Settings menu

Menu item	Description
E-mail Server Setup Subject Message	Specifies e-mail server information **Notes:** - The subject box has a limitation of 255 characters. - The message box has a limitation of 512 characters.

E-mail Server Setup
Send me a copy
    Never appears
    On by default
    Off by default
    Always On
	Sends a copy of the e-mail back to the creator of the e-mail
	
	Note: "Never appears" is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
E-mail Server Setup Max E-mail size 0–65535 KB	Specifies the maximum e-mail size in kilobytes **Note:** E-mail above the specified size is not sent.
E-mail Server Setup Size Error Message	Sends a message when an e-mail is greater than the configured size limit
E-mail Server Setup Limit destinations	Sends an e-mail only when the address contains the domain name, such as a company domain name **Notes:** • E-mail can be sent only to the specified domain. • The limit is one domain.

E-mail Server Setup
Web Link Setup
    Server
    Login
    Password
    Path
    Base file name
    Web Link
	Defines the e-mail server path name; for example: /directory/path
	Note: The following characters or symbols are invalid entries for a path name:
	* : ? < > |.

Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specifies the format of the file **Note:** PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.6	Sets the version of the PDF file that will be scanned to e-mail **Note:** 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Text/Photo Photograph Text	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned to e-mail **Notes:** • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the documents are mostly text or line art. • Photograph is used when the document is a high-quality photograph or print. • Text is used when the document is mostly text.
Color Gray Color	Specifies whether a job prints in grayscale or color **Note:** Color is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Resolution 75 150 200 300 400 600	Specifies how many dots per inch are scanned **Note:** 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size <x> A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Letter/Legal	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation).

Menu item	Description
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Notes:** • "Best for content" is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is lessened. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text or photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 50 is the factory default setting.
E-mail images sent as Attachment Web Link	Specifies how the images will be sent **Note:** Attachment is the factory default setting.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to e-mail job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specifies whether the transmission log prints **Note:** "Print log" is the factory default setting.
Log Paper Source Tray <x> Manual Feeder	Specifies a paper source for printing e-mail logs **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
E-mail Bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off. **Note:** 8 bit is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning On Off	Lets you copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single job **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Scan Preview On Off	Specifies whether a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save e-mail addresses as shortcuts **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the Save as Shortcut button does not appear on the e-mail Destination screen.
Background Removal -4 to +4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a scanned image **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.

Color Dropout
Color Dropout
  None
  Red
  Green
  Blue
Default Red Threshold
  0–255
Default Green Threshold
  0–255
Default Blue Threshold
  0–255
	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout
	Notes:
	
	• None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout.
	• 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.

Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specifies the contrast of the output **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image On Off	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image On Off	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to +4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge On Off	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness on a scanned image **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.
Use cc:/bcc: On Off	Enables the use of the cc: and bcc: fields **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

FTP Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specifies the format of the FTP file **Note:** PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.6	Sets the version level of the PDF file for FTP **Note:** 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Text/Photo Photograph Text	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned to FTP **Notes:** • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the documents are mostly text or line art. • Photograph is used when the document is a high-quality photograph or inkjet print • Text is used when the document is mostly text.
Color Gray Color	Specifies whether a job prints in grayscale or color **Note:** Color is the factory default setting.
Resolution 75 150 200 300 400 600	Specifies how many dots per inch are scanned **Note:** 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size <x> A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Letter/Legal	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation).
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Notes:** • "Best for content" is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is lessened. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Sets the quality of the text in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text/photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 50 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specifies whether the transmission log prints **Note:** "Print log" is the factory default setting.
Log Paper Source Tray <x> Manual Feeder	Specifies a paper source for FTP logs **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
FTP bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off **Note:** 8 bit is the factory default setting.
Base File Name	Lets you enter a base file name **Note:** There is an image limitation of 53 characters.
Custom Job Scanning On Off	Lets you copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single job **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Scan Preview On Off	Specifies whether a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Enables shortcut creation for FTP addresses **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to +4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.

Color Dropout
Color Dropout
  None
  Red
  Green
  Blue
Default Red Threshold
  0–255
Default Green Threshold
  0–255
Default Blue Threshold
  0–255
	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout
	Notes:
	
	• None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout.
	• 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.

Menu item	Description
Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specifies the contrast of the output **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image On Off	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image On Off	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4–+4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge On Off	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness of a scanned image **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.

Flash Drive menu

Scan Settings

Menu item	Description
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specifies the format of the FTP file **Note:** PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.6	Sets the version level of the PDF file for FTP **Note:** 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Text/Photo Photograph Text	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned to FTP **Notes:** • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the documents are mostly text or line art. • Photograph is used when the document is a high-quality photograph or inkjet print • Text is used when the document is mostly text.
Color Gray Color	Specifies whether a job prints in grayscale or color **Note:** Gray is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Resolution 75 150 200 300 400 600	Specifies how many dots per inch are scanned **Note:** 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size <x> A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Letter/Legal	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation).

Menu item	Description
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Notes:** - "Best for content" is the factory default setting. - 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is lessened. - 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. - This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Sets the quality of the text in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text/photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 50 is the factory default setting.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. **Notes:** - On is the factory default setting. - This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Scan Bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off **Note:** 8 bit is the factory default setting.
Base File Name	Lets you enter a base file name **Note:** There is an image limitation of 53 characters.
Custom Job Scanning On Off	Lets you copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single job **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Scan Preview On Off	Specifies whether a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to +4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description

Color Dropout
Color Dropout
    None
    Red
    Green
    Blue
Default Red Threshold
    0–255
Default Green Threshold
    0–255
Default Blue Threshold
    0–255
	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout
	Notes:
	
	• None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout.
	• 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.

Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specifies the contrast of the output **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image On Off	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image On Off	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4–+4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge On Off	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness on a scanned image **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.

Print Settings

Copies 1–999	Specifies a default number of copies for each print job **Note:** 1 is the factory default setting.
Paper Source Tray <x> Manual Feeder	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Color Off On	Specifies color for a print job **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Collate Off (1,1,1,2,2,2) On (1,2,1,2,1,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Sides (Duplex) 2 sided 1 sided	Controls whether the job prints on one side or both sides of the paper **Note:** 1 sided is the factory default setting.
Duplex Binding Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplexed pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page **Notes:** • Long Edge is the factory default setting. • Long Edge specifies that binding be placed on the left edge of portrait pages and the top edge of landscape pages. • Short Edge specifies that binding be placed on the top edge of portrait pages and the left edge of landscape pages.
Orientation Auto Long Edge Short Edge	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page sheet **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape. • Long Edge uses landscape. • Short Edge uses portrait.
N-up (pages-side) Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a sheet of paper **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.
N-up Border None Solid	Prints a border around each page image when using N-up (pages-side) **Note:** None is the factory default setting.
N-up Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images when using N-up (pages-side) **Notes:** • Horizontal is the factory default setting. • Positioning depends on the number of images and whether the images are in portrait or landscape orientation.

Separator Sheets None Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting. • Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collation is set to On. If Collation is set to Off, then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's. • Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs. • Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or inserting blank pages in a document for notes.
Separator Sheet Source Tray <x> Multipurpose Feeder	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets **Notes:** • Tray 1 is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette in order for Multipurpose Feeder to appear as a menu setting.
Blank Pages Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job **Note:** Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

Print Settings

Setup menu

Menu item	Description
Printer Language PCL Emulation PS Emulation	Sets the default printer language **Notes:** • PCL emulation uses a PCL interpreter for processing print jobs. PostScript emulation uses a PS interpreter for processing print jobs. • PCL is the factory default printer language. • Setting a printer language as the default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.
Job Waiting On Off	Specifies that print jobs be removed from the print queue if they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. They are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print. **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu appears only if a non-Read Only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.

Menu item	Description
Print Area Normal Whole Page	Sets the logical and physical printable area **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary. • The Whole Page setting allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer will clip the image at the Normal setting boundary. • The Whole Page setting only affects pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter. This setting has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.
Printer Usage Max Yield Max Speed	Sets the printer for a faster print speed or a higher toner yield. **Note:** Max Yield is the factory default.
Black Only Mode Off On	Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black toner cartridge. **Note:** Off is the factory default. **Note:** The printer driver is capable of overriding this setting.
Download Target RAM Flash Disk	Sets the storage location for downloads **Notes:** • RAM is the factory default setting. • Storing downloads in flash memory or on a printer hard disk places them in permanent storage. Downloads remain in flash memory or on the printer hard disk even when the printer is turned off. • Storing downloads in RAM is temporary. • This menu appears only if a flash and/or disk option is installed.
Job Accounting On Off	Specifies whether the printer stores statistical information about the most recent print jobs on the hard disk **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. Off means the printer does not store job statistics. • The statistics include a record of print errors, the print time, the job size in bytes, the requested paper size and type, the total number of printed pages, and the total number of copies requested. • Job Accounting is available only when a printer hard disk is installed and working properly. It should not be Read/Write or Write protected. Job Buffer Size should not be set to 100%. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to reset. The menu selection is updated.

Menu item	Description
Resource Save On Off	Specifies how the printer handles temporary downloads, such as fonts and macros stored in RAM, when the printer receives a job that requires more memory than is available **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. Off sets the printer to retain the downloads only until memory is needed. Downloads are deleted in order to process print jobs. • The On setting retains the downloads during language changes and printer resets. If the printer runs out of memory, `38 Memory Full` appears, and downloads are not deleted.
Print All Order Alphabetically Newest First Oldest First	Specifies the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed when Print All is selected **Notes:** • Alphabetically is the factory default setting. • Print jobs always appear in alphabetical order on the printer control panel.

Finishing menu

Menu item	Description
Sides (Duplex) 2 sided 1 sided	Specifies whether duplex (2-sided) printing is set as the default for all print jobs **Notes:** • 1 sided is the factory default setting. • To set 2-sided printing from the software program: for Windows users, click **File ➜ Print**, and then click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**; for Macintosh users, choose **File** > **Print**, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus.
Duplex Binding Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplexed pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page **Notes:** • Long Edge is the factory default setting. • Long Edge specifies that binding be placed on the left edge of portrait pages and the top edge of landscape pages. • Short Edge specifies that binding be placed on the top edge of portrait pages and the left edge of landscape pages.
Copies 1–999	Specifies a default number of copies for each print job **Note:** 1 is the factory default setting.
Blank Pages Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job **Note:** Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Collate Off (1,1,1,2,2,2) On (1,2,1,2,1,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. No pages will be collated. • The On setting stacks the print job sequentially. • Both settings print the entire job the number of times specified by the Copies menu setting.
Separator Sheets None Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting. • Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collation is set to On. If Collation is set to Off, a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's. • Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs. • Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or inserting blank pages in a document for notes.
Separator Source Tray <x> Multipurpose Tray	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets **Notes:** • Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette in order for Multipurpose Tray to appear as a menu setting.
N-up (pages-side) Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a sheet of paper. **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.
N-up Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images when using N-up (pages-sides) **Notes:** • Horizontal is the factory default setting. • Positioning depends on the number of images and whether the images are in portrait or landscape orientation.
Orientation Auto Long Edge Short Edge	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page sheet **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape. • Long Edge uses landscape. • Short Edge uses portrait.

Menu item	Description
N-up Border None Solid	Prints a border around each page image when using N-up (pages-sides) **Note:** None is the factory default setting.

Quality menu

Menu item	Description
Print Mode Color Black Only	Specifies whether images are printed in monochrome grayscale or in color **Note:** Color is the factory default setting.
Color Correction Auto Off Manual	Adjusts the color output on the printed page **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. Auto applies different color conversion tables to each object on the printed page. • Off turns off color correction. • Manual allows customization of the color tables using the settings available from the Manual Color menu. • Due to the differences in additive and subtractive colors, certain colors that appear on computer monitors are impossible to duplicate on the printed page.
Print Resolution 1200 dpi 4800 CQ	Specifies the printed output resolution **Notes:** • 4800 CQ is the factory default setting. • 1200 dpi provides the highest resolution output, and increases gloss.
Toner Darkness 1–5	Lightens or darkens the printed output **Notes:** • 4 is the factory default setting. • Selecting a smaller number can help conserve toner. • If Print Mode is set to Black Only, a setting of 5 increases toner density and darkness to all print jobs. • If Print Mode is set to Color, a setting of 5 is the same as a setting of 4.
Enhance Fine Lines On Off	Enables a print mode preferable for files such as architectural drawings, maps, electrical circuit diagrams, and flow charts **Notes:** • To set Enhance Fine Lines from the software program, with a document open, click **File ➙ Print**, and then click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**. • To set Enhance Fine Lines using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in a browser window.

Menu item	Description
Color Saver On Off	Reduces the amount of toner used for graphics and images. The amount of toner used for text is not reduced. **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • On overrides Toner Darkness settings.
RGB Brightness -6–6	Adjusts brightness in color outputs **Notes:** • 0 is the factory default setting. • -6 is the maximum decrease. 6 is the maximum increase. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.
RGB Contrast 0–5	Adjusts contrast in color outputs **Notes:** • 0 is the factory default setting. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.
RGB Saturation 0–5	Adjusts saturation in color outputs **Notes:** • 0 is the factory default setting. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.

Color Balance
Cyan
    -5–5
Magenta
    -5–5
Yellow
    -5–5
Black
    -5–5
    Reset Defaults
    0
	Adjusts color in printed output by increasing or decreasing the amount of toner being used for each color
	
	Note: 0 is the factory default setting.

Color Samples sRGB Display sRGB Vivid Display—True Black Vivid Off—RGB US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off—CMYK	Prints sample pages for each of the RGB and CMYK color conversion tables used in the printer **Notes:** • Selecting any setting prints the sample. • Color samples consist of a series of colored boxes along with the RGB or CMYK combination that creates the color observed. These pages can be used to help decide which combinations to use to get the desired printed output. • From a browser window, type the IP address of the printer to access a complete list of color sample pages from the Embedded Web Server.

Menu item	Description

Manual Color
RGB Image
  Vivid
  sRGB Display
  Display—True Black
  sRGB Vivid
  Off
RGB Text
  Vivid
  sRGB Display
  Display—True Black
  sRGB Vivid
  Off
RGB Graphics
  Vivid
  sRGB Display
  Display—True Black
  sRGB Vivid
  Off
	Customizes the RGB color conversions
	
	Notes:
	
	• sRGB Display is the factory default setting for RGB Image. This applies a color conversion table to an output that matches the colors displayed on a computer monitor.
	• sRGB Vivid is the factory default setting for RGB Text and RGB Graphics. sRGB Vivid applies a color table that increases saturation. This is preferred for business graphics and text.
	• Vivid applies a color conversion table that produces brighter, more saturated colors.
	• Display—True Black applies a color conversion table that uses only black toner for neutral gray colors.
	• Off turns off color conversion.

Manual Color
CMYK Image
  US CMYK
  Euro CMYK
  Vivid CMYK
  Off
CMYK Text
  US CMYK
  Euro CMYK
  Vivid CMYK
  Off
CMYK Graphics
  US CMYK
  Euro CMYK
  Vivid CMYK
  Off
	Customizes the CMYK color conversions
	
	Notes:
	
	• US CMYK is the US factory default setting. US CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches SWOP color output.
	• Euro CMYK is the international factory default setting. Euro CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches EuroScale color output.
	• Vivid CMYK increases color saturation for the US CMYK color conversion table.
	• Off turns off color conversion.

Color Adjust	Initiates a recalibration of color conversion tables and allows the printer to make adjustments for color variations in output **Notes:** • Calibrating starts when the menu is selected. **Calibrating** appears on the display until the process is finished. • Color variations in output sometimes result from changeable conditions such as room temperature and humidity. Color adjustments are made on printer algorithms. Color alignment is also recalibrated in this process.

Utilities menu

Menu item	Description
Remove Held Jobs Confidential Held Not Restored All	Removes confidential and held jobs from the printer hard disk **Notes:** • Selecting a setting affects only print jobs that are resident in the printer. Bookmarks, jobs on flash drives, and other types of held jobs are not affected. • Selecting Not Restored removes all Print and Hold jobs that were *not* restored from the disk.
Format Flash Yes No	Formats the flash memory. Flash memory refers to the memory added by installing a flash memory option card in the printer. **Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not turn off the printer while the flash memory is formatting. **Notes:** • A flash memory option card must be installed in the printer and operating properly for this menu item to be available. The flash memory option card must not be Read/Write or Write protected. • Selecting Yes deletes all data stored in flash memory. • No cancels the format request.
Delete Downloads on Disk Delete Now Do Not Delete	Removes downloads from the printer hard disk, including all held Jobs, buffered jobs, and parked jobs. Job accounting information is not affected. **Note:** Delete Now is the default setting.
Job Acct Stat Print Clear	Prints a list of all stored job statistics or deletes the information from the printer hard disk **Notes:** • A printer hard disk must be installed in the printer and operating properly for this menu item to be available. • Selecting Print prints a list of statistics. • Clear deletes all job statistics stored on the printer hard disk. • The Clear selection will not appear if Job Accounting is set to MarkTrack™ using NPA.
Hex Trace Activate	Assists in isolating the source of a print job problem **Notes:** • When Activate is selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation and control codes are not executed. • To exit or deactivate Hex Trace, turn the printer off or reset the printer.
Coverage Estimator Off On	Provides an estimate of the percentage coverage of black on a page. The estimate is printed on a separate page at the end of each print job. **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
LCD Contrast 1–10	Adjusts the contrast lighting of the display **Notes:** • 5 is the factory default setting. • A higher setting makes the display appear lighter. • A lower setting makes the display appear darker.
LCD Brightness 1–10	Adjusts the brightness of the backlight on the display **Notes:** • 5 is the factory default setting. • A higher setting makes the display appear lighter. • A lower setting makes the display appear darker.

PDF menu

Menu item	Description
Scale to Fit Yes No	Scales page content to fit the selected paper size **Note:** No is the factory default setting.
Annotations Do Not Print Print	Prints annotations in a PDF **Note:** Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

PostScript menu

Menu item	Description
Print PS Error On Off	Prints a page containing the PostScript error **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Font Priority Resident Flash/Disk	Establishes the font search order **Notes:** • Resident is the factory default setting. • A formatted flash memory option card or printer hard disk must be installed in the printer and operating properly for this menu item to be available. • The flash memory option or printer hard disk cannot be Read/Write, Write, or password protected. • Job Buffer Size must not be set to 100%.

Menu item	Description
Image Smoothing On Off	Enhances the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images and smooths their color transitions **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Image Smoothing has no effect on images that are 300 dpi or higher in resolution.

PCL Emul menu

Menu item	Description
Font Source Resident Disk Flash Download All	Specifies the set of fonts used by the Font Name menu item **Notes:** • Resident is the factory default setting. It shows the factory default set of fonts downloaded into RAM. • Flash and Disk settings show all fonts resident in that option. • Flash option must be properly formatted and cannot be Read/Write, Write, or password protected. • Download shows all the fonts downloaded into RAM. • All shows all fonts available to any option.
Font Name RO Courier	Identifies a specific font and the option where it is stored **Notes:** • RO Courier is the factory default setting. • RO Courier shows the font name, font ID, and storage location in the printer. The font source abbreviation is R for Resident, F for Flash, K for Disk, and D for download.
Symbol Set 10U PC-8 12U PC-850	Specifies the symbol set for each font name **Notes:** • 10U PC-8 is the US factory default setting. • 12U PC-850 is the international factory default setting. • A symbol set is a set of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text. Only the supported symbol sets are shown.
PCL Emulation Settings Point Size 1.00–1008.00	Changes the point size for scalable typographic fonts **Notes:** • 12 is the factory default setting. • Point Size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch. • Point sizes can be increased or decreased in 0.25-point increments.

Menu item	Description
PCL Emulation Settings Pitch 0.08–100	Specifies the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts **Notes:** • 10 is the factory default setting. • Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters per inch (cpi). • Pitch can be increased or decreased in 0.01-cpi increments. • For nonscalable monospaced fonts, the pitch appears on the display but cannot be changed.

PCL Emulation Settings
Orientation
  Portrait
  Landscape
	Specifies the orientation of text and graphics on the page
	Notes:
	
	• Portrait is the factory default setting.
	• Portrait prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the page.
	• Landscape prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the page.

PCL Emulation Settings
Lines per Page
  1–255
  60
  64
	Specifies the number of lines that print on each page
	Notes:
	
	• 60 is the US factory default setting. 64 is the international default setting.
	• The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the desired Paper Size and Orientation before setting Lines per Page.

PCL Emulation Settings
A4 Width
  198 mm
  203 mm
	Sets the printer to print on A4-size paper
	Notes:
	
	• 198 mm is the factory default setting.
	• The 203-mm setting sets the width of the page to allow the printing of eighty 10-pitch characters.

PCL Emulation Settings
Auto CR after LF
  On
  Off
	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command
	Notes:
	
	• Off is the factory default setting.
	• Setting alterations are duplicated in the PPDS menu.

PCL Emulation Settings
Auto LF after CR
  On
  Off
	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command
	Notes:
	
	• Off is the factory default setting.
	• Setting alterations are duplicated in the PPDS menu.

Menu item	Description

Tray Renumber
Assign MP Feeder
   Off
   None
   0–199
Assign Tray <x>
   Off
   None
   0–199
Assign Manual Paper
   Off
   None
   0–199
Assign Man Env
   Off
   None
   0–199
	Configures the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays, drawers, and feeders
	
	Notes:
	
	• Off is the factory default setting.
	• None is not an available selection. It is only displayed when it is selected by the PCL 5 interpreter.
	• None ignores the Select Paper Feed command.
	• 0–199 allows a custom setting to be assigned.

Tray Renumber View Factory Def None	Displays the factory default setting assigned to each tray, drawer, or feeder

Tray Renumber
Restore Defaults
   Yes
   No
	Returns all tray, drawer, and feeder assignments to the factory default settings

HTML menu

Menu item		Description
Font Name Albertus MT Antique Olive Apple Chancery Arial MT Avant Garde Bodoni Bookman Chicago Clarendon Cooper Black Copperplate Coronet Courier Eurostile Garamond Geneva Gill Sans Goudy Helvetica Hoefler Text	Intl CG Times Intl Courier Intl Univers Joanna MT Letter Gothic Lubalin Gothic Marigold MonaLisa Recut Monaco New CenturySbk New York Optima Oxford Palatino StempelGaramond Taffy Times TimesNewRoman Univers Zapf Chancery	Sets the default font for HTML documents **Note:** The Times font will be used in HTML documents that do not specify a font.

Menu item	Description
Font Size 1–255 pt	Sets the default font size for HTML documents **Notes:** • 12 pt is the factory default setting. • Font size can be increased in 1-point increments.
Scale 1–400%	Scales the default font for HTML documents **Notes:** • 100% is the factory default setting. • Scaling can be increased in 1% increments.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Sets the page orientation for HTML documents **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.
Margin Size 8–255 mm	Sets the page margin for HTML documents **Notes:** • 19 mm is the factory default setting. • Margin size can be increased in 1-mm increments.

Menu item	Description
Backgrounds Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether to print backgrounds on HTML documents **Note:** Print is the factory default setting.

Image menu

Menu item	Description
Auto Fit On Off	Selects the optimal paper size, scaling, and orientation **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • The On setting overrides scaling and orientation settings for some images.
Invert On Off	Inverts bi-tonal monochrome images **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The font size can be increased in 1-point increments. • This setting does not apply to GIF or JPEG images.
Scaling Anchor Top Left Best Fit Anchor Center Fit Height/Width Fit Height Fit Width	Scales the image to fit the selected paper size **Notes:** • Best Fit is the factory default setting. • When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.
Orientation Portrait Landscape Rev Portrait Rev Landscape	Sets the image orientation **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.

PictBridge menu

Menu item	Description

Photo Size
    Auto
    L
    2L
    Hagaki Postcard
    Card Size
    100x150 mm
    4x6 inches
    8x10 inches
    Letter
    A4
    A5
    JIS B5
	Selects the optimal photo size
	Notes:
	   - Auto is the factory default setting. - If both the printer and the PictBridge-enabled camera have a value for this setting, the camera value *always* supersedes the printer value.

Layout
    Auto
    Off
    2 Up
    3 Up
    4 Up
    6 Up
    9 Up
    12 Up
    16 Up
    Index Print
	Selects the optimal photo layout
	Notes:
	   - Auto is the factory default setting. - If both the printer and the PictBridge-enabled camera have a value for this setting, the camera value *always* supersedes the printer value.

Quality
    Normal
    Draft
    Fine
	Selects the optimal quality
	Notes:
	   - Normal is the factory default setting. - If both the printer and the PictBridge-enabled camera have a value for this setting, the camera value *always* supersedes the printer value.

Paper Source
    Multipurpose tray
    Tray <x>
    Manual Paper
	Sets the tray the paper pulls from
	Notes:
	   - Multipurpose tray is the factory default setting. - If both the printer and the PictBridge-enabled camera have a value for this setting, the camera value *always* supersedes the printer value.

XPS menu

Menu item	Description

Print Error Pages
    Off
    On
	Prints a page containing information on errors, including XML markup errors
	Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Help menu

The Help menu consists of a series of Help pages that are stored in the multifunction printer (MFP) as PDFs. They contain information about using the printer and performing various tasks, including copying, scanning, and faxing.

English, French, German, and Spanish translations are stored in the printer.

Other translations are available on the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Menu item	Description
Print all guides	Prints all the guides
Copy guide	Provides information about making copies and changing settings
E-mail guide	Provides information about sending e-mails using addresses, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Fax guide	Provides information about sending faxes using fax numbers, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
FTP guide	Provides information about scanning documents directly to an FTP server using an FTP address, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Information guide (this page)	Provides help in locating additional information
Print defects guide	Provides help in resolving repeating defects in copies or prints
Supplies guide	Provides part numbers for ordering supplies

Maintaining the printer

Periodically, certain tasks are required to maintain optimum print quality.

Cleaning the exterior of the printer

1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the wall outlet.

   CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables to the printer before proceeding.

2 Remove paper from the standard exit bin.

3 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water.

   Warning—Potential Damage: Do not use household cleaners or detergents, as they may damage the finish of the printer.

4 Wipe only the outside of the printer, making sure to include the standard exit bin.

   Warning—Potential Damage: Using a damp cloth to clean the interior may cause damage to your printer.

5 Make sure the paper support and standard exit bin are dry before beginning a new print job.

Cleaning the scanner glass

Clean the scanner glass if you encounter print quality problems, such as streaks on copied or scanned images.

1 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.

2 Open the scanner cover.
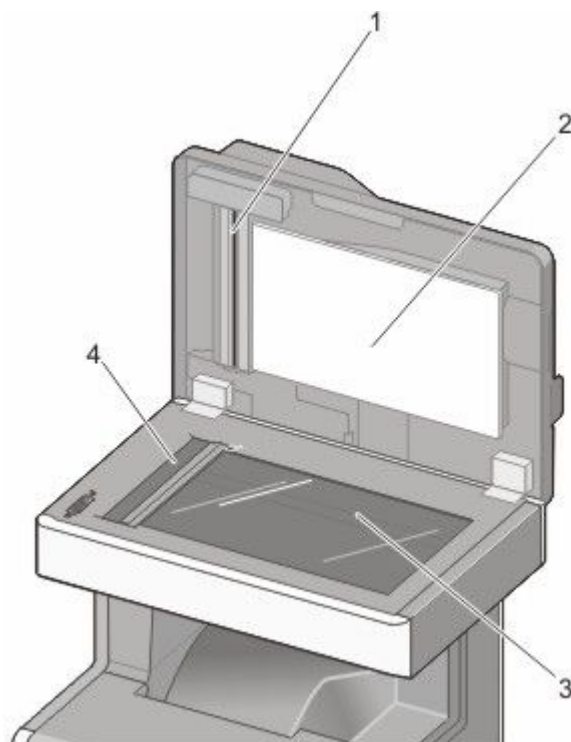
1	White underside of the ADF cover
2	White underside of the scanner cover
3	Scanner glass
4	ADF glass

3 Wipe the areas shown and let them dry.

4 Close the scanner cover.

Cleaning the ADF parts

Clean the ADF parts periodically to maintain optimal printing performance. Residue on the ADF parts may cause print quality issues and false 290–294 paper jam messages.

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth with water.

3 Open the ADF cover.
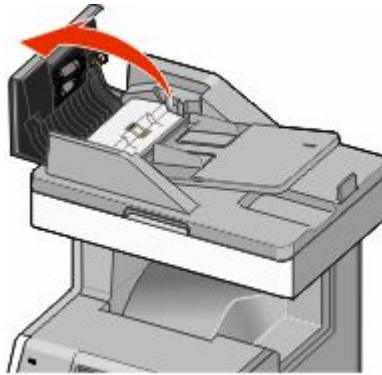
4 Remove the pick roller assembly.
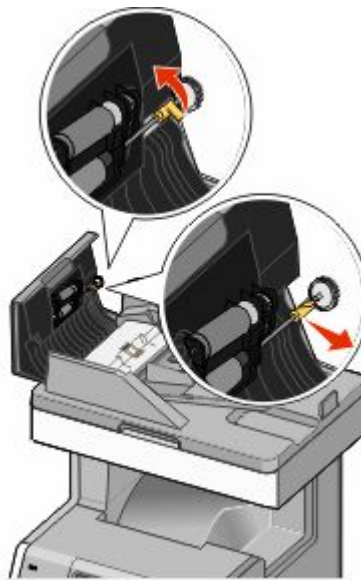
5 Wipe the surface of both pick rollers.

6 Replace the pick roller assembly.

7 Wipe the entire surface under the ADF cover, including the two small white rollers.

8 Wipe the separator pad, and then wipe the pick pad.
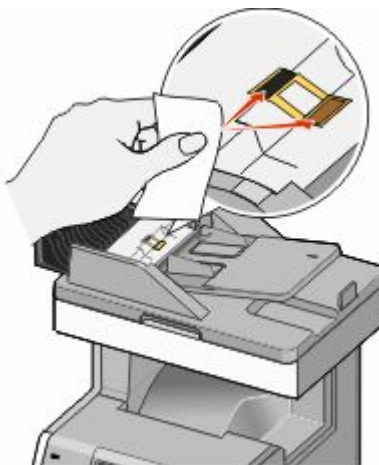
9 Pull the flap up as shown, and then wipe the sensor behind it.
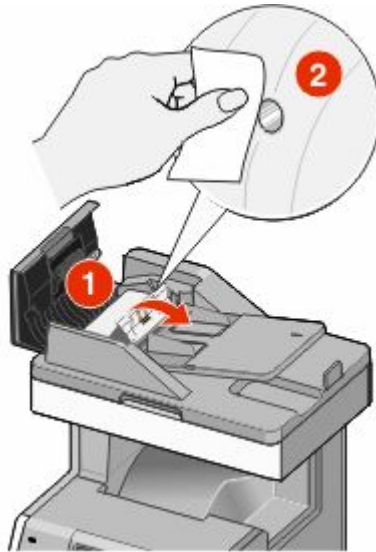
10 Close the flap, and then close the ADF cover.
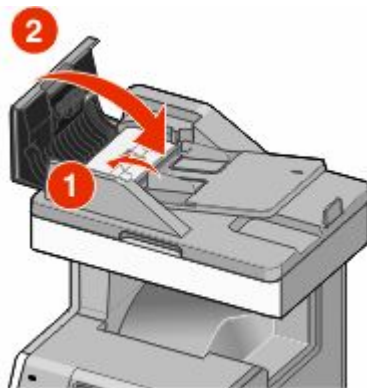
Cleaning the printhead lenses

Clean the printhead lenses when you encounter print quality problems.

1 Open the upper front door, and then open the lower front door.
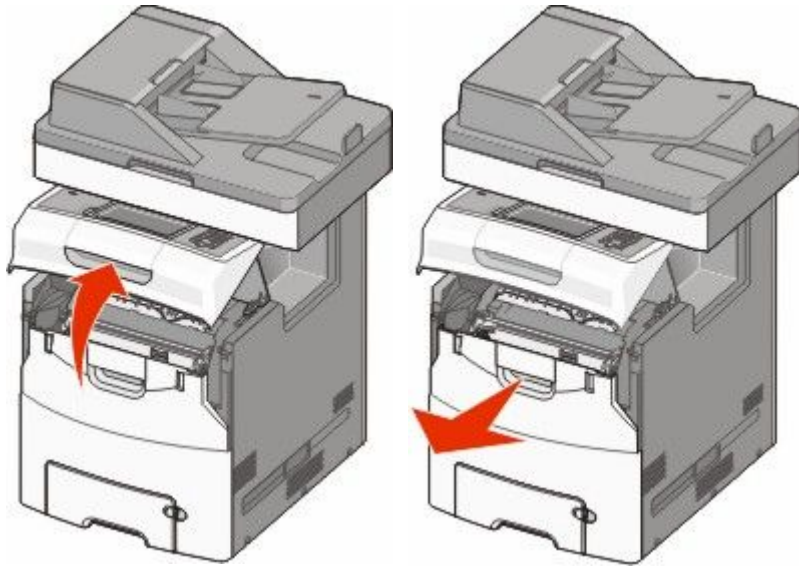
Warning—Potential Damage: To avoid overexposing the photoconductors, do not leave the front doors open for more than 10 minutes.

2 Remove all four toner cartridges. Do not remove the photoconductors for this procedure.

3 Locate the four printhead lenses.
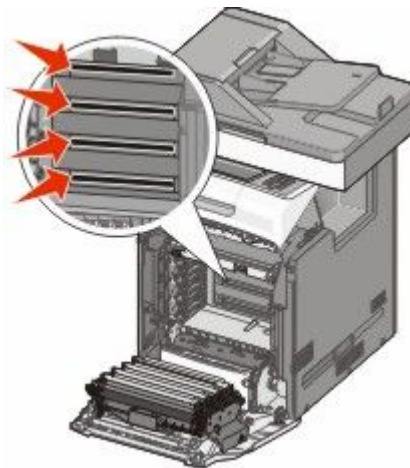
4 Clean the lenses using a can of compressed air.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the printhead lenses.

5 Reinstall the four toner cartridges.

6 Close the lower front door, and then close the upper front door.
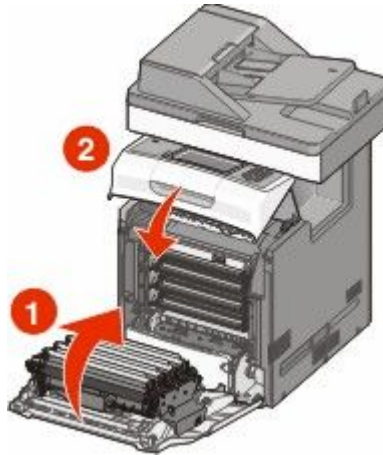
Adjusting scanner registration

Scanner Registration is a process to align the scan area with the paper location. To manually adjust the scanner registration:

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Clean the scanner glass and backing material.

3 Hold down ② and ⑥ while turning the printer on.

4 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.

5 Touch the down arrow until `Scanner Manual Registration` appears.

6 Touch **Scanner Manual Registration**.

7 Touch **Print Quick Test** to print a registration page.

8 Choose the section of the scanner to align.

To align the scanner glass (flatbed):

a Place the Quick Test page facedown on the scanner glass.
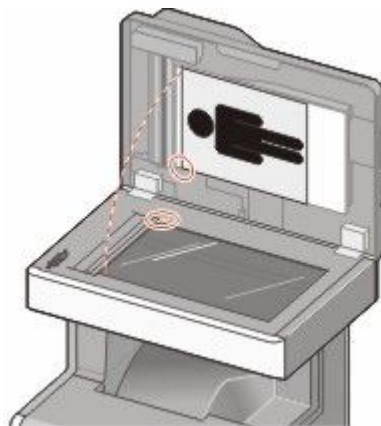
b Touch **Copy Quick Test**.

The scanner prints a copy of the Quick Test page.

c Touch **Flatbed**.

d Use the copy of the Quick Test page to adjust the Left Margin and Top Margin settings.

e Touch **Submit**.

f Touch **Copy Quick Test** and compare the new copy to the original.

Repeat the flatbed alignment steps until the position on the page of the Quick Test copy closely matches the original.

To align the ADF:

a Do one of the following:

- To align the ADF front: place the Quick Test page faceup, short edge first into the ADF.
- To align the ADF back: place the Quick Test page facedown, short edge first into the ADF.

b Touch **Copy Quick Test**.

The scanner prints a copy of the Quick Test page.

c Touch **ADF Front** or **ADF Back**.

d Use the copy of the Quick Test page to adjust the Horizontal Adjust and Top Margin settings.

e Touch **Submit**.

f Touch **Copy Quick Test** and compare the new copy to the original.

Repeat the ADF alignment steps until the position on the page of the Quick Test copy closely matches the original.

9 Touch **Back**.

10 Touch **Exit Configuration**.

Storing supplies

Choose a cool, clean storage area for the printer supplies. Store supplies right side up in their original packing until you are ready to use them.

Do not expose supplies to:

- Direct sunlight
- Temperatures above 35°C (95°F)
- High humidity above 80%
- Salty air
- Corrosive gases
- Heavy dust

Checking the status of supplies

A message appears on the display when a replacement supply item is needed or when maintenance is required.

Checking the status of supplies from the printer control panel

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch **Status/Supplies**.

> **Note:** If **Status/Supplies** is not on the home screen, then print a menu settings page to review the status of the supplies.

Checking the status of supplies from a network computer

Note: The computer must be connected to the same network as the printer.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Device Status**. The Device Status page appears, displaying a summary of supply levels.

Ordering supplies

To order supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web Site at **www.lexmark.com** or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

Notes:

- The toner gauge is an estimate of how much toner is left in your cartridge.
- All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on letter- or A4-size plain paper.

Ordering toner cartridges

When `88 Cyan cartridge low`, `88 Magenta cartridge low`, `88 Yellow cartridge low`, or `88 Black cartridge low` appears, order a new cartridge.

When `88 Replace Cyan cartridge`, `88 Replace Magenta cartridge`, `88 Replace Yellow cartridge`, or `88 Replace Black cartridge` appears, you *must* replace the specified cartridge.

Estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO / IEC 19798 standard (with about 5% coverage per color). Extremely low print coverage (less than 1.25% for a color) for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield for that color and may cause cartridge parts to fail prior to exhaustion of toner.

Ordering photoconductors

When `84 photoconductor low` or `84 <color> photoconductor nearly low` appears, order a replacement photoconductor.

When `84 Replace <color> photoconductor` appears, you *must* replace the specified photoconductor.

Part name	Part number
Photoconductor	C734X20G
Photoconductor, Multi-Pack	C734X24G

Ordering a fuser or a transfer module

When `80 Fuser Life Warning` or `83 Transfer Module Life Warning` appears, order a replacement fuser or a transfer module.

When `80 Replace Fuser` or `83 Replace Transfer Module` appears, install the new fuser or the new transfer module. For installation information, see the documentation that came with the part.

Part name	Part number
Fuser	40X5095 (100 volt)
	40X5093 (115 volt)
	40X5094 (230 volt)
Transfer Module	40X5096

Ordering a waste toner box

When `82 Waste toner box nearly full` appears, order a replacement waste toner box. When `82 Replace waste toner box` appears, you *must* replace the waste toner box.

Note: Waste toner box reuse is not recommended.

Part name	Part number
Waste Toner Box	C734X77G

Ordering ADF replacement parts

Order ADF replacement parts if you experience problems with paper double-feeding or failing to feed through the ADF.

Part name	Part number
ADF pick assembly	40X5188
Separator pad	40X5187
ADF pick pad	40X5189

Replacing Supplies

Replacing a photoconductor

There are three different display messages that may appear when a photoconductor replacement is necessary: `84 Replace <color> photoconductor`, `84 <color> photoconductor nearly low`, or `84 <color> photoconductor low`.

1 Open the upper front door, and then open the lower front door.
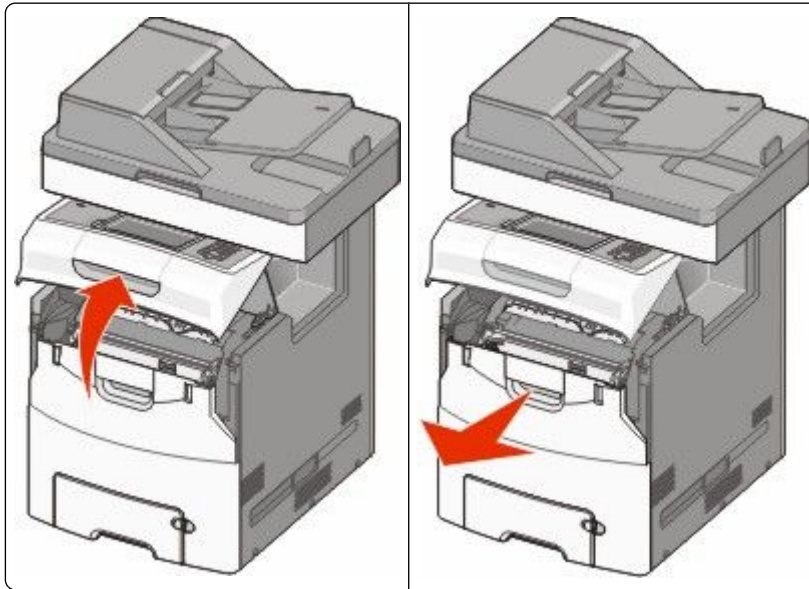
> **Warning—Potential Damage:** To avoid overexposing the photoconductors, do not leave the front doors open for more than 10 minutes.

2 Pull the specified photoconductor up, and then slide it to the right to remove it from the printer.
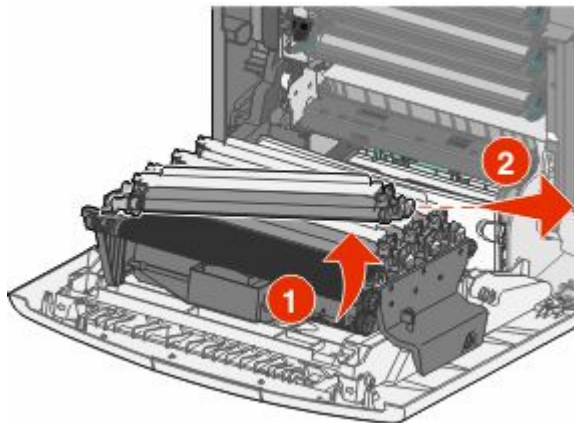
3 Unpack the replacement photoconductor.
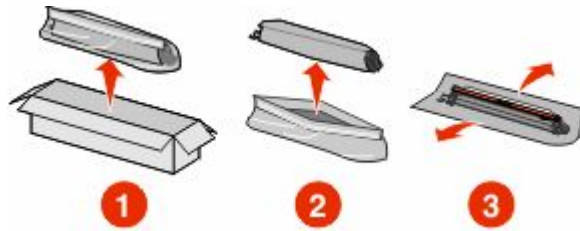
4 Align and insert the left end of the photoconductor, and then press the right end into place.

5 Remove the red packing strip from the top of the photoconductor.
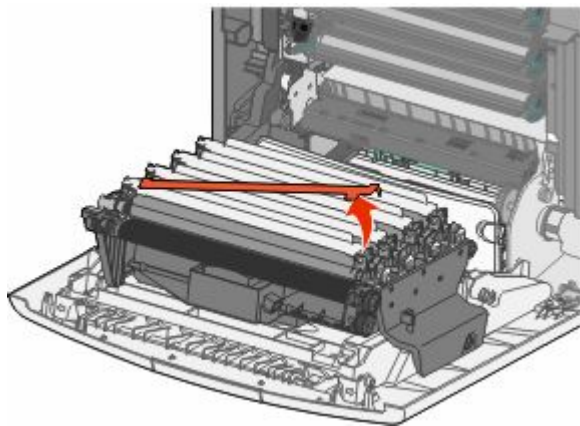
6 Place the old photoconductor into the replacement photoconductor box, and then place the return label on the box and mail it to Lexmark for recycling.

Maintaining the printer
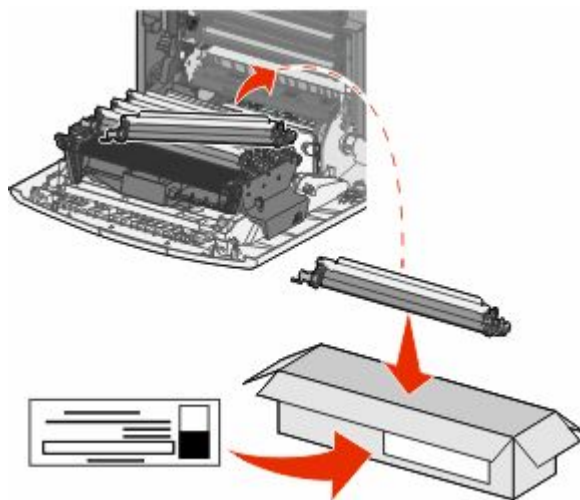
7 Close the lower front door, and then close the upper front door.
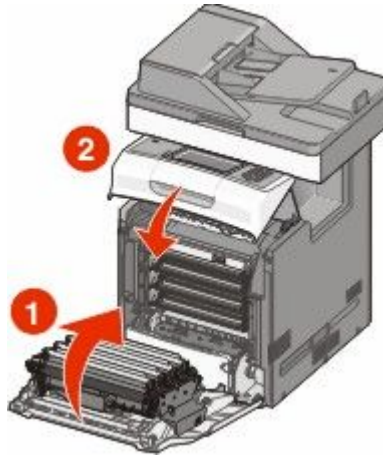
Replacing a toner cartridge

When `88 Replace <color> cartridge`, `88 <color> cartridge nearly low`, or `88 <color> cartridge low` appears on the display, or when print becomes faded, try to extend the life of the specified cartridge.

1 Open the upper front door, and then open the lower front door.

Warning—Potential Damage: To avoid overexposing the photoconductors, do not leave the front doors open for more than 10 minutes.
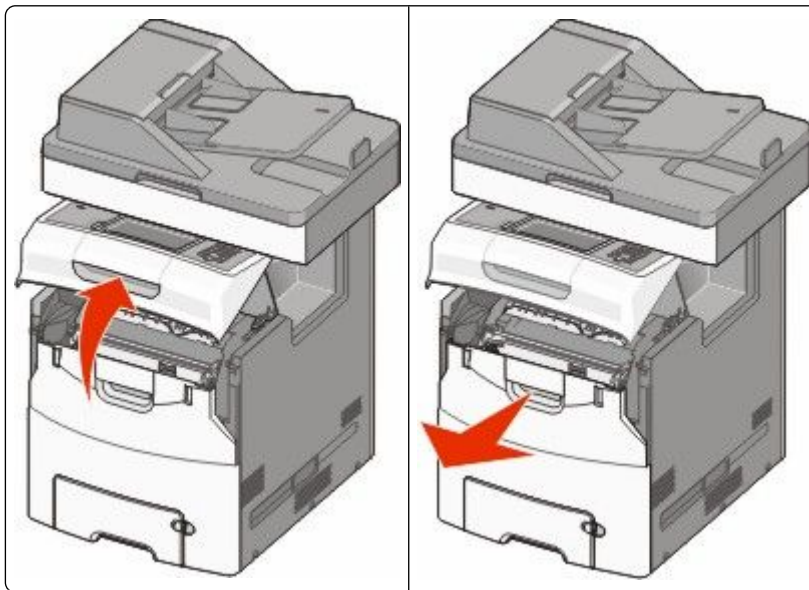
2 Pull up and out on the green tabs of the specified cartridge to remove it from the printer.
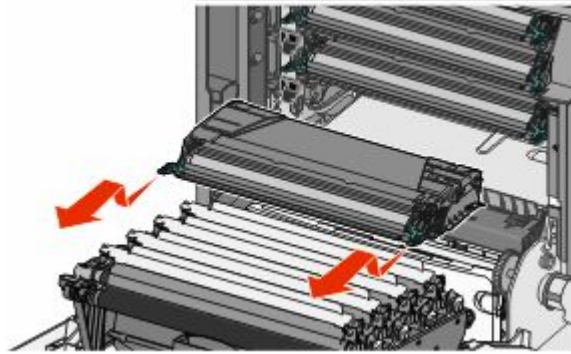
3 Shake the cartridge front to back and side to side to redistribute the toner.

4 Reinsert the cartridge to continue printing.
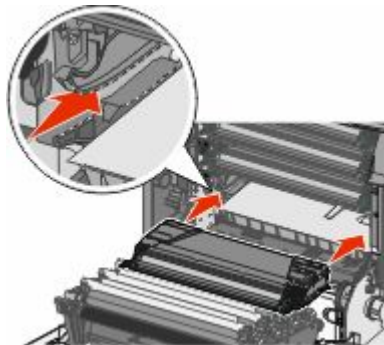
5 Repeat this process multiple times until printed text and graphics remain faded.

When printed text and graphics remain faded, replace the specified cartridge. Repeat steps 1 and 2, and then continue with the following steps.

6 Unpack a new cartridge.
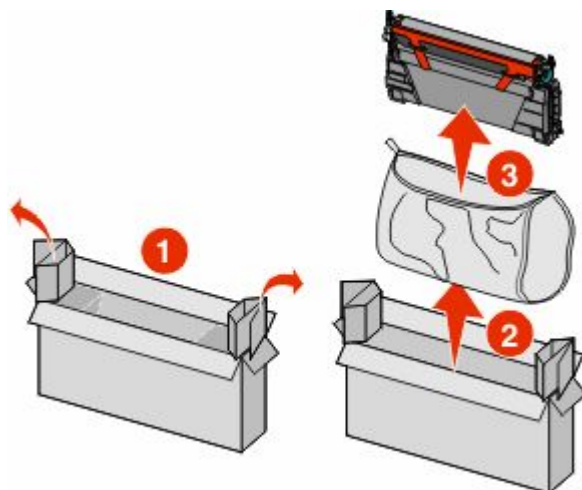
7 Place the old cartridge into the replacement cartridge box, and then place the return label on the box and mail it to Lexmark for recycling.
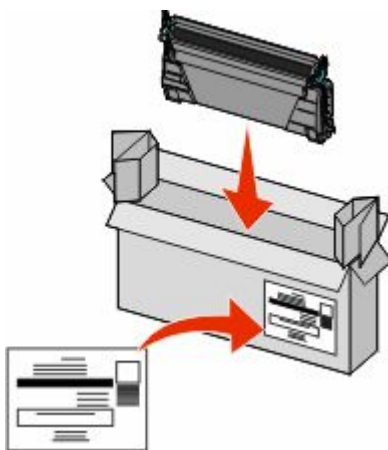
8 Shake the new cartridge front to back and side to side to evenly distribute the toner.
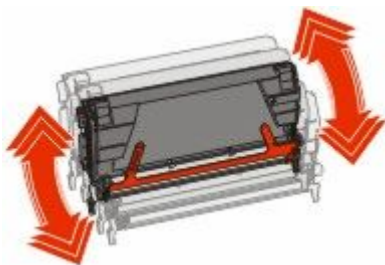
9 Remove the red packing strips from the new cartridge.
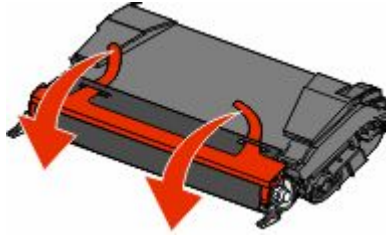
10 Insert the new cartridge into the printer. Push the toner cartridge in as far as it will go. The cartridge clicks into place when correctly installed.
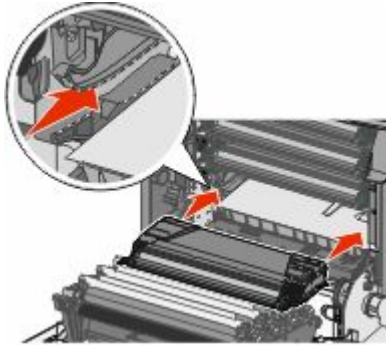
11 Close the lower front door, and then close the upper front door.
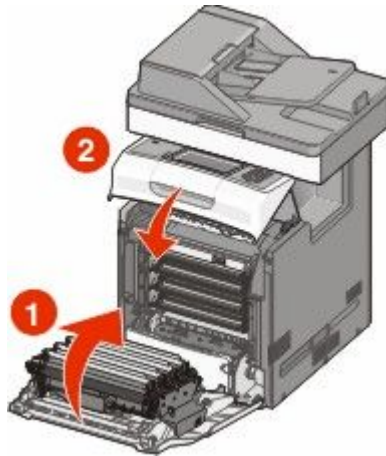
Replacing the ADF parts

Note: The printer comes with a spare separator pad and air filter, located under the scanner. To access the spare parts, remove the slotted screw.
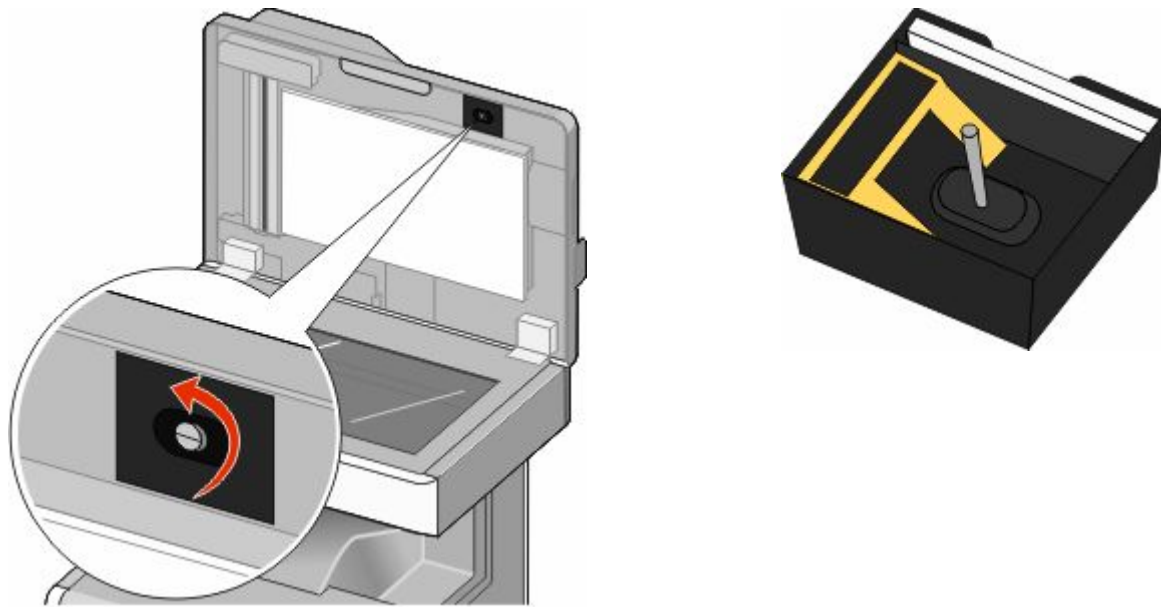
Note: It is recommended that the ADF area and parts be cleaned periodically.

Replacing the pick roller assembly

1 Turn the printer off, and then open the ADF cover.
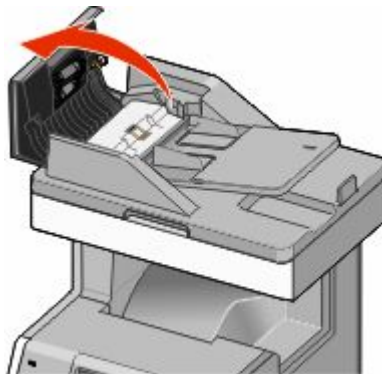
2 Replace the pick roller assembly, as shown.
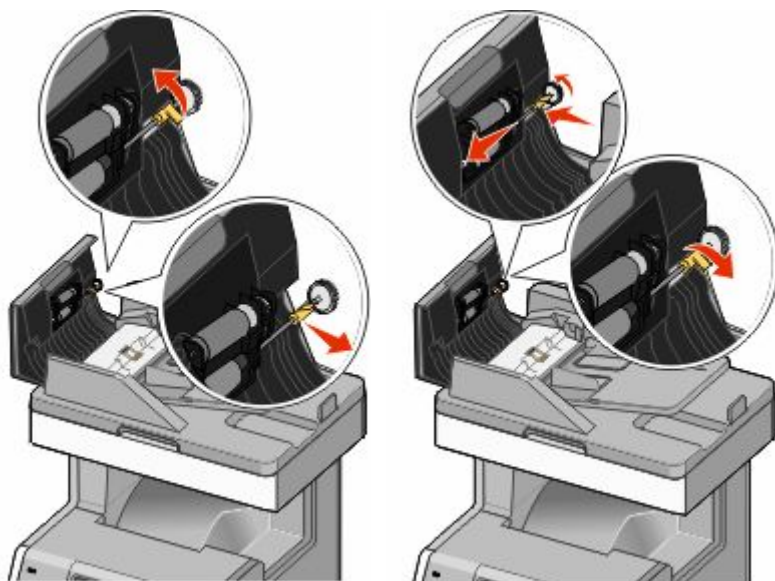
3 Dispose of the old pick roller assembly.
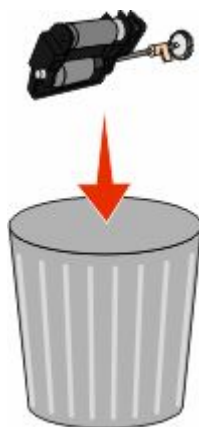
Replacing the separator pad

1 With the ADF cover still open, pull up on the separator pad to remove it.

2 Replace the separator pad.

3 Dispose of the old separator pad.
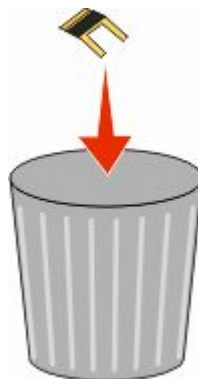
Replacing the pick pad

1 With the ADF cover still open, pull straight up on the pick pad to remove it.

2 Replace the pick pad with a new one, and then discard the old pad.
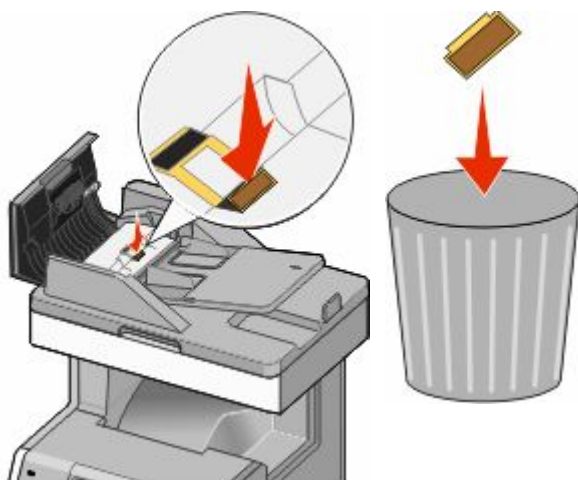
3 Open the flap to access the sensor lens underneath, and then wipe the lens clean.
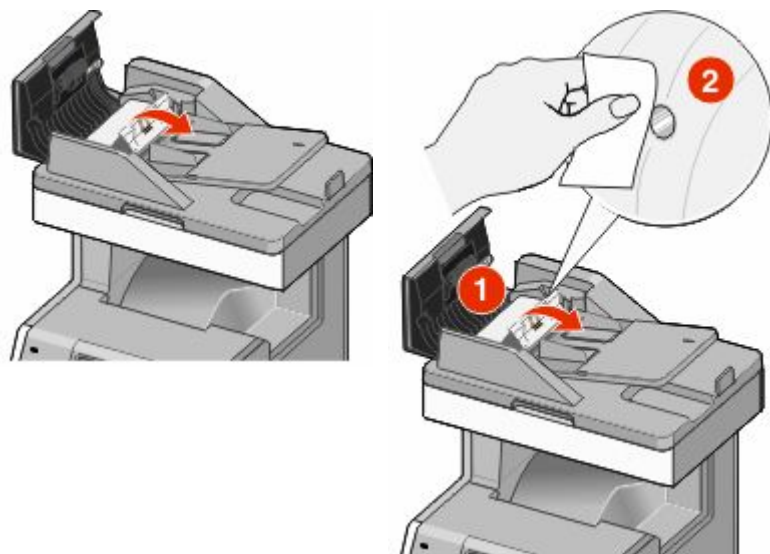
4 Close the flap, and then close the ADF cover.
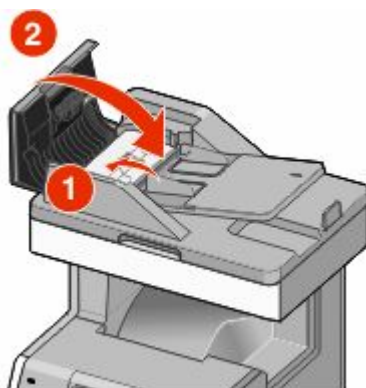
Replacing the air filter

1 Locate the air filter on the back of the printer, and then remove the cover.
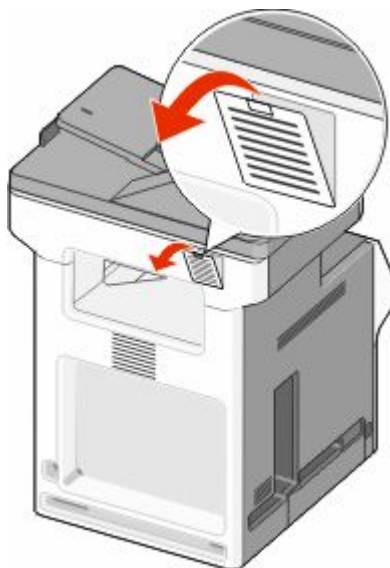
2 Remove the old air filter, and then discard it.
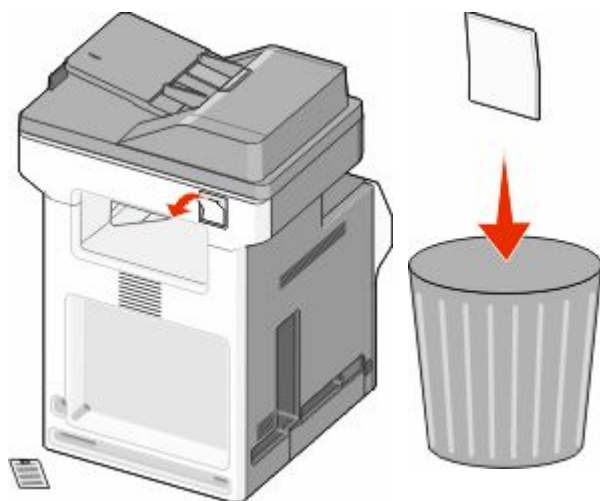
3 Replace the air filter, and then replace the cover.
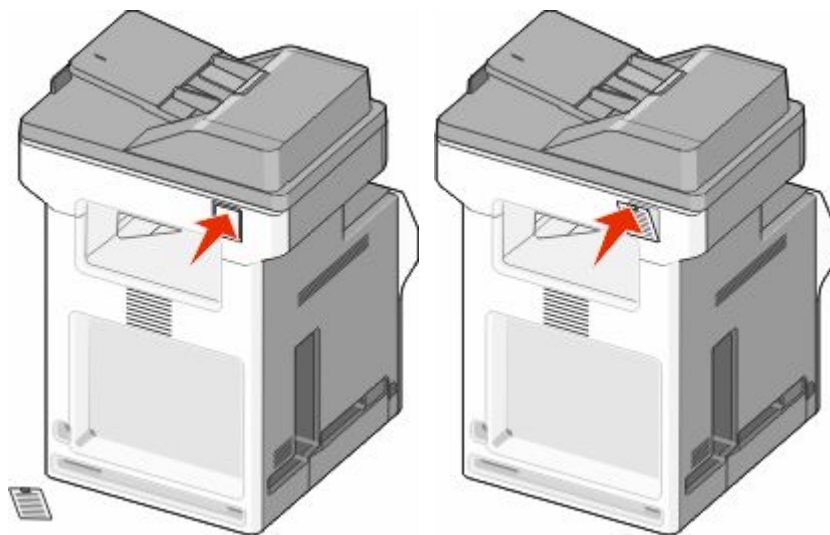
4 Turn the printer on.

Replacing the waste toner box

Replace the waste toner box when `82 Replace waste toner box` or `82 Waste toner box nearly full` appears. The printer will not continue printing until the waste toner box is replaced.

1 Unpack the replacement waste toner box, and remove it from its shipping box.
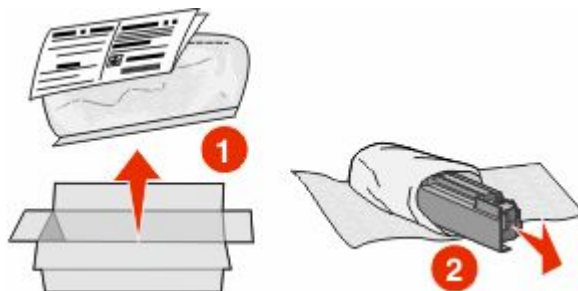
2 Locate the waste toner box release button on the left side of the printer.

3 Press the release button to the left, and pull the waste toner box out to remove it from the printer.
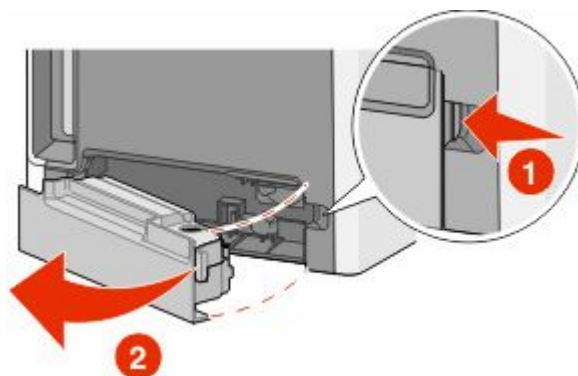
4 Peel the seal from the side of the full waste toner box as shown, and then place it over the hole to seal off the waste toner box.
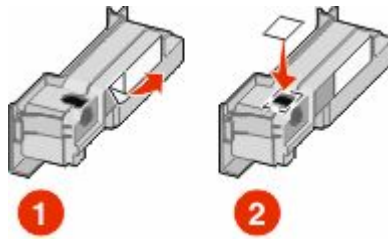
5 Place the sealed waste toner box in the recycling bag.

6 Place the bag into the shipping box you just removed the replacement part from.
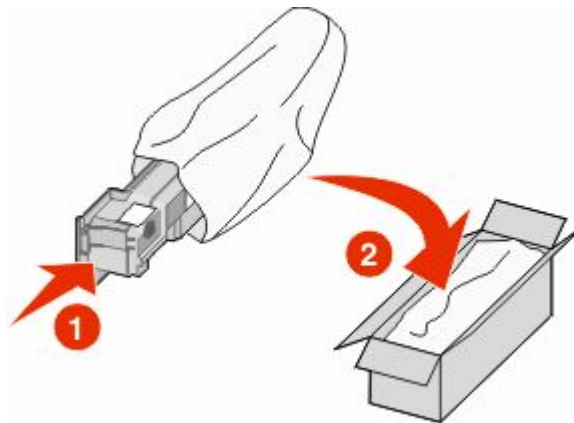
7 Peel the recycling label off, and place it on the shipping box.
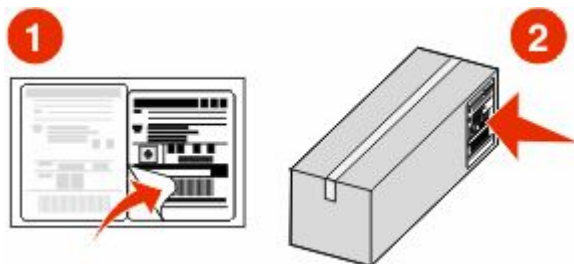
8 Insert the new waste toner box into the printer.
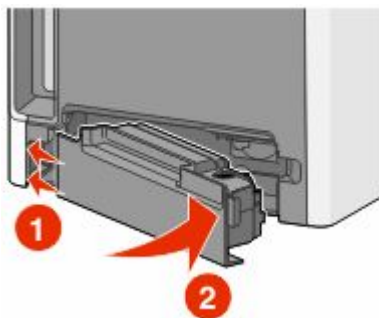
Moving the printer to another location

Warning—Potential Damage: Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Use the handholds located on both sides and rear of the printer to lift it.
- Make sure your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Before setting up the printer, make sure there is adequate clearance around it.

The printer and options can be safely moved to another location by following these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must be able to support its weight and have a large enough surface to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

Shipping the printer

When shipping the printer, use the original packaging or call the place of purchase for a relocation kit.

Administrative support

Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD and the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* on the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com.**

Using the Embedded Web Server

If the printer is installed on a network, the Embedded Web Server is available for a range of functions including:
* Viewing a virtual display of the printer control panel
* Checking the status of the printer supplies
* Configuring printer settings
* Configuring network settings
* Viewing reports

To access the Embedded Web Server, type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

Notes:

* If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
* For more information, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD and the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* on the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Checking the device status

Using the Embedded Web Server, you can view paper tray settings, the level of toner in the print cartridge, the percentage of life remaining in the maintenance kit, and capacity measurements of certain printer parts. To view the device status:

1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

 Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Device Status**.

Setting up e-mail alerts

You can have the printer send you an e-mail when the supplies are getting low or when the paper needs to be changed, added, or unjammed.

To set up e-mail alerts:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Other Settings, click **E-mail Alert Setup**.

4 Select the items for notification, and type in the e-mail addresses.

5 Click **Submit**.

Note: See your system support person to set up the e-mail server.

Viewing reports

You can view some reports from the Embedded Web Server. These reports are useful for assessing the status of the printer, the network, and supplies.

To view reports from a network printer:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

> **Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Reports**, and then click the type of report you want to view.

Restoring the factory default settings

If you want to retain a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before you restore the factory default settings. For more information, see "Printing a menu settings page" on page 43.

Warning—Potential Damage: Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default setting. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and Network/Port menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch ![icon].

3 Touch **Settings**.

4 Touch **General Settings**.

5 Touch the down arrow until `Factory Defaults` appears.

6 Touch the left or right arrow until `Restore Now` appears.

7 Touch **Submit**.

8 Touch ![icon].

Troubleshooting

The indicator light is blinking

The indicator light blinks until you set up Fax and E-mail. To disable the blinking light, follow these steps:

Note: Before completing these instructions for a printer on a network, make sure the fax cables are connected.

1 Touch **Menus**.

2 Touch **Settings**.

3 Touch **General Settings**.

4 Touch the left or right arrow next to `Run initial setup` to select `Yes`, and then touch **Submit**.

`Submitting changes` appears.

5 Turn the printer off, and then turn the printer back on.

6 From the printer control panel, touch your language.

7 Touch your country or region, and then touch **Continue**.

8 Touch the left or right arrow to select your time zone, and then touch **Continue**.

9 Touch **Fax** and **E-mail** to deselect them, and then touch **Continue**.

Note: You can use these same steps to enable Fax and E-mail.

Solving basic printer problems

If there are basic printer problems, or the printer is unresponsive, make sure:

- The power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off by any switch or breaker.
- The printer is not plugged into any surge protectors, uninterrupted power supplies, or extension cords.
- Other electronic equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- The printer is turned on. Check the printer power switch.
- The printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the host computer, print server, option, or other network device.
- All options are properly installed.
- The printer driver settings are correct.

Once you have checked each of these possibilities, turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. This often fixes the problem.

Understanding printer messages

Change <src> to <x>

<src> is a tray or feeder, and <x> is a paper size or type.

You can change the current paper source for the remainder of the print job. The formatted page will print on the paper loaded in the selected tray. This may cause clipping of text or images. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the tray selected for the print job.
- Touch **Continue** to continue the job if the correct size and type are loaded in the tray, and this size and type are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.

    Note: If you touch Continue when there is no paper in the tray, the job is not continued.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the current job.

Check tray <x> connection

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn the printer off and then back on.

    If the error occurs a second time:

    1 Turn the printer off.

    2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

    3 Remove the tray.

    4 Reattach the tray.

    5 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.

    6 Restart the printer.

    If the error occurs again:

    1 Turn the printer off.

    2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

    3 Remove the tray.

    4 Contact Customer Support.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the tray.

Disk corrupted

The printer attempted a hard disk recovery on a corrupted hard disk, and the hard disk cannot be repaired. The hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch **Reformat disk** to reformat the hard disk and clear the message.

Note: Reformatting the disk deletes all the files currently stored on the disk.

Fax memory full

There is not enough memory to send the fax job.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

Fax partition inoperative. Contact system administrator.

The fax partition appears to be corrupted. Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer. If the message appears again, then contact your system support person.

Fax server 'To Format' not set up. Contact system administrator.

The printer is in Fax Server mode, but the Fax Server setup has not been completed.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Complete the Fax Server setup. If the message appears again, contact your system support person.

Fax Station Name not set up

The Fax Station Name has not been entered. Sending and receiving faxes is disabled until fax is configured properly.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Complete the Analog Fax Setup. If the message appears again, contact your system support person.

Fax Station Number not set up

The Fax Station Number has not been entered. Sending and receiving faxes is disabled until fax is configured properly.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Complete the Analog Fax Setup. If the message appears again, contact your system support person.

Load <src> with <x>

<src> is a tray or feeder, and <x> is a paper type or size.

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default source.
- Cancel the current job.

Load manual feeder with <x>

<x> is a paper type or size.

Try one or more of the following:
- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default source.
- Cancel the current job.

Memory full, cannot print faxes

There is not enough memory to print the fax job.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message without printing. Held faxes will attempt to print after the printer has been restarted.

Remove paper from standard output bin

Remove the stack of paper from the standard exit bin.

Restore Held Jobs?

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to restore all held jobs stored on the printer hard disk.
- Touch **Do not restore** if you do not want any print jobs to be restored.

Scan Document Too Long

The scan job exceeds the maximum number of pages. Touch **Cancel Job** to clear the message.

SMTP server not set up. Contact system administrator.

An error occurred on the SMTP server, or the SMTP server is not configured properly. Touch **Continue** to clear the message. If the message appears again, contact your system support person.

Unsupported disk

An unsupported printer hard disk has been installed. Remove the unsupported device, and then install a supported one.

31 Missing or defective <color> cartridge

The specified toner cartridge is either missing or not functioning properly. Try one or more of the following:
- Remove the specified toner cartridge, and then reinstall it.
- Remove the specified toner cartridge, and then install a new one.

32 Cartridge part number unsupported by device

Remove the unsupported toner cartridge, and then install a supported one.

34 Short paper

Try one or more of the following:
- Load the appropriate paper or other specialty media in the proper tray.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print the job using a different paper tray.
- Check tray length and width guides and make sure the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Check the Print Properties or Print dialog settings to make sure the print job is requesting the correct paper size and type.
- Check that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if the MP Feeder Size is set to Universal, make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed.
- Cancel the current print job.

35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to disable Resource Save and continue printing.
- To enable Resource Save after receiving this message, make sure the link buffers are set to Auto, and then exit the menus to activate the link buffer changes. When `Ready` appears, enable Resource Save.
- Install additional memory.

37 Insufficient memory to collate job

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to print the portion of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job.
- Cancel the current print job.

37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted

The printer deleted some held jobs in order to process current jobs.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

38 Memory full

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Cancel the current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

39 Complex page, some data may not have printed

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

- Install additional printer memory.

50 PPDS font error

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- The printer cannot find a requested font. From the PPDS menu, select **Best Fit**, and then select **On**. The printer will find a similar font and reformat the affected text.
- Cancel the current print job.

51 Defective flash detected

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

  Downloaded fonts and macros not previously stored in flash memory are deleted.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in flash memory.
- Upgrade to a larger capacity flash memory card.

54 Network <x> software error

<x> is the number of the network connection.

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer or print server.

54 Standard network software error

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer or print server.

55 Unsupported option in slot <x>

<x> is a slot on the printer system board.

Try one or more of the following:
1 Turn the printer power off.
2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

3 Remove the unsupported option card from the printer system board.

4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.

5 Turn the printer power back on.

56 Parallel port <x> disabled

<x> is the number of the parallel port.

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

  The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

56 Serial port <x> disabled

<x> is the number of the serial port.

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

  The printer discards any data received through the serial port.
- Make sure the Serial Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

56 Standard USB port disabled

Try one or more of the following:
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

  The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

58 Too many flash options installed

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

3 Remove the excess flash memory.

4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.

5 Turn the printer back on.

58 Too many trays attached

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

3 Remove the additional trays.

4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.

5 Turn the printer back on.

59 Incompatible tray <x>

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the specified tray.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing without using the specified tray.

61 Remove defective disk

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Install a different printer hard disk before performing any operations that require a printer hard disk.

62 Disk full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue processing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a larger printer hard disk.

63 Unformatted disk

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Format the printer hard disk.

If the error message remains, the hard disk may be defective and require replacing.

80 Fuser life warning

1 Order a replacement fuser immediately. When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

80 Replace fuser

1 Replace the fuser using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

82 Replace waste toner box

The waste toner box is full.

1 Replace the waste toner box using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

2 Clear the paper path.

82 Waste toner box missing

Reinsert the waste toner box into the printer, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

83 Replace transfer module

1 Replace the transfer module using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

83 Transfer module life warning

1 Order a replacement transfer module immediately. When print quality is reduced, install the new transfer module using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

83 Transfer module missing

Insert the transfer module into the printer.

84 Replace <color> photoconductor

Replace the specified color photoconductor using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

84 <color> photoconductor low

1 Order a replacement photoconductor immediately.

2 When print quality is reduced, install the new photoconductor using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

3 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

84 <color> photoconductor nearly low

1 Order a replacement photoconductor.

2 When print quality is reduced, install the new photoconductor using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

3 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

88 Replace <color> cartridge

The specified toner cartridge is exhausted.

1 Replace the specified toner cartridge.

2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

88 <color> cartridge nearly low

1 Order a replacement toner cartridge.

2 Remove the specified cartridge.

3 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute toner.

4 Reinsert the cartridge, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

Note: Repeat this procedure multiple times until the print remains faded, and then replace the cartridge.

88 <color> cartridge low

1 Order a replacement toner cartridge immediately.

2 Remove the specified cartridge.

3 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute toner.

4 Reinsert the cartridge, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

Note: Repeat this procedure multiple times until the print remains faded, and then replace the cartridge.

840.01 Scanner Disabled

This message indicates that the scanner has been disabled by the system support person.

840.02 Scanner Auto Disabled

The printer identified a problem with the scanner and automatically disabled it.

1 Remove all pages from the ADF.

2 Turn the printer off.

3 Wait 15 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

    Note: If turning the printer off and then on again does not clear the message, then contact your system support person.

4 Place the document in the ADF, and then adjust the paper guides.

5 On the home screen, touch **Copy**, or use the keypad to enter the number of copies.

6 Change the copy settings as needed.

7 Touch **Copy It**.

900–999 Service <message>

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

3 Check all cable connections.

4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.

5 Turn the printer back on.

If the service message appears again, contact Customer Support, and report the message.

1565 Emulation error, load emulation option

The printer automatically clears the message in 30 seconds and then disables the download emulator on the firmware card.

To fix this, download the correct download emulator version from the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Clearing jams

By carefully selecting paper and loading it properly, you can avoid most jams. If jams do occur, follow the steps outlined in this section.

To clear a jam message and resume printing, clear the entire paper path, and then touch **Continue**. If Jam Recovery is set to On, then the printer prints a new copy of the page that jammed. If Jam Recovery is set to Auto, then the printer reprints the jammed page if enough printer memory is available.

Avoiding jams

The following hints can help you avoid jams:

Paper tray recommendations

- Make sure the paper lies flat in the paper tray.
- Do not remove the paper tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load the paper tray while the printer is printing. Load it prior to printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height does not exceed the indicated maximum height.
- Make sure the guides in the paper tray or the manual feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing too tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the paper tray in firmly after loading paper.

Paper recommendations

- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.
- Flex, fan, and straighten paper before loading it.

- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same stack.
- Make sure all sizes and types are set correctly in the printer control panel menus.
- Store paper per the manufacturer's recommendations.

Understanding jam messages

The following table lists the jam messages that can occur.

Message	See
200 Paper jam, check [area name]	"200 paper jam" on page 264
200 Paper jam, [x] pages jammed	"200–201 paper jams" on page 265
201 Paper jam, check [area name]	"200–201 paper jams" on page 265
201 Paper jam, [x] pages jammed	"201 paper jam" on page 266
202 Paper jam, check [area name]	"202 paper jam" on page 267
202 Paper jam, [x] pages jammed	
203 Paper jam, check [area name]	"203 paper jam" on page 270
203 Paper jam, [x] pages jammed	
230 Paper jam, [area name]	"230 paper jam" on page 270
230 Paper jam, [x] pages jammed	
241 Paper jam, check [area name]	"24x paper jam" on page 272
241 Paper jam, [x] pages jammed	
24x Paper jam, check [area name]	"24x paper jam" on page 272
24x Paper jam, [x] pages jammed	
250 Paper jam, check [area name]	"250 paper jam" on page 274
250 Paper jam, [x] pages jammed	

Message	See
290 Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner	"290–294 paper jams" on page 275
290 Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner	
291 Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner	
291 Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner	
292 Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner	
292 Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner	
293 Replace all originals if restarting job	
293 Replace jammed originals if restarting job	
293.02 Flatbed cover open	
293.02 Replace jammed originals if restarting job	
294 Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner	
294 Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner	
294.01 Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner	
294.01 Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner	

200 paper jam

1 Open the upper front door.

⚠️ **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Open the lower front door.

Note: To avoid overexposing the photoconductor units, do not leave the lower front door open longer than 10 minutes.

3 Pull the jammed paper up and out to remove it from behind the toner cartridge area.
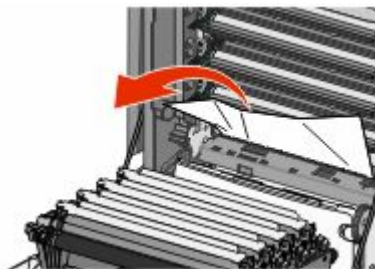
Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

4 Close the lower front door.

5 Close the upper front door.

6 Touch **Continue**.

200–201 paper jams

1 Open the upper front door.

> ⚠ **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Open the lower front door.

> **Note:** To avoid overexposing the photoconductor units, do not leave the front door open longer than 10 minutes.

3 Pull the paper forward if it is lodged under the photoconductor units.
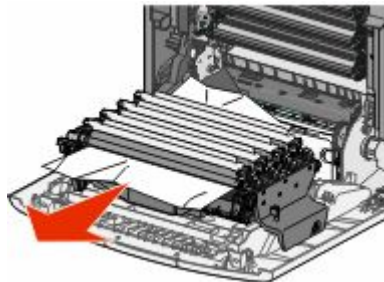
> **Note:** You may need to remove the photoconductor units if the paper is lodged too tightly under them.

4 Remove each photoconductor unit, and then place it on a flat surface.
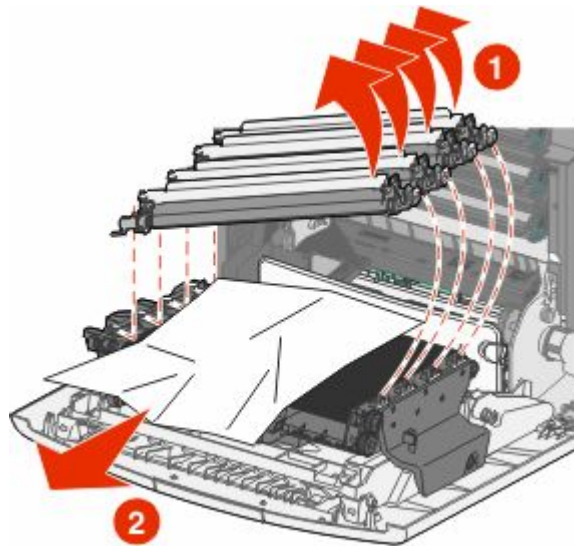
5 Remove the jammed paper, and then replace each photoconductor unit.

6 Close the lower front door.

7 Close the upper front door.

8 Touch **Continue**.

201 paper jam

1 Open the upper front door, and then open the lower front door.

> **Warning—Potential Damage:** To avoid overexposing the photoconductors, do not leave the front doors open for more than 10 minutes.

> ⚠ **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Determine where the jam is located, and then remove it:

a If paper is visible under the fuser, then grasp it on each side and pull it forward.
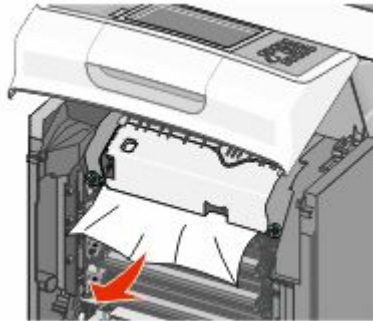
b If paper is not visible, then you will need to remove the fuser unit.

> **Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so may cause your fingers to touch the roller underneath the fuser unit. Touching the fuser roller will damage the fuser.

1 Turn the screws on the fuser to the left to loosen them.
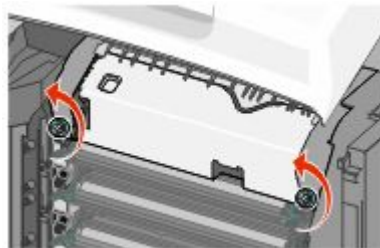
2 Lift the handholds on each side of the fuser, and then pull forward to remove it.
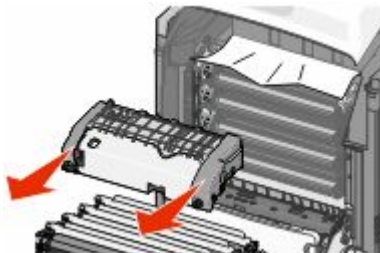
3 Remove the jammed paper.

4 Align the fuser unit using the handholds on each side, and then place it back into the printer.
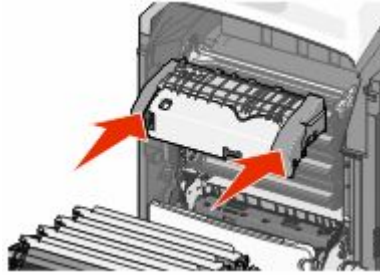
5 Turn the screws to the right to fasten the fuser securely.
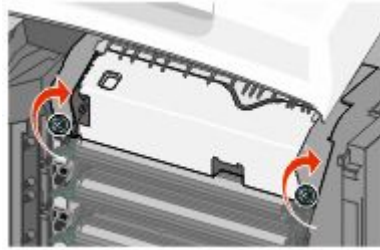
3 Close the lower front door, and then close the upper front door.

4 Touch **Continue**.

202 paper jam

If the paper is visible in the standard exit bin, then grasp the paper and pull it away from the bin.
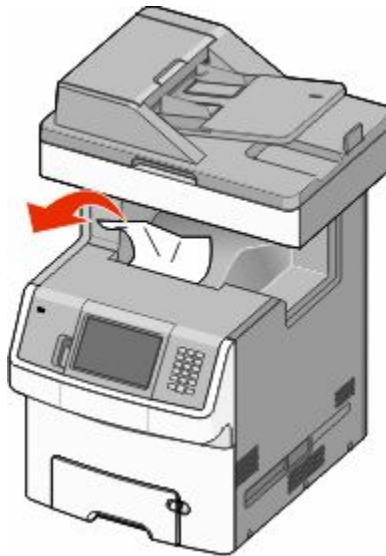
Paper jam under the fuser

1 Open the upper front door, and then open the lower front door.

> **Warning—Potential Damage:** To avoid overexposing the photoconductors, do not leave the front doors open for more than 10 minutes.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Grasp the paper on each side and pull it forward.
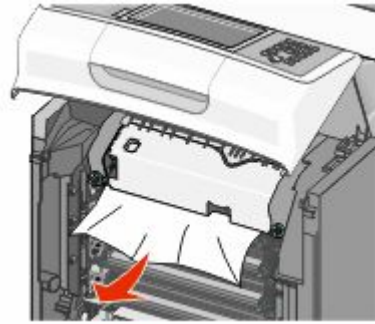
3 Close the lower front door, and then close the upper front door.

4 Touch **Continue**.

Paper jam behind the fuser

1 Open the upper front door, and then open the lower front door.

> **Warning—Potential Damage:** To avoid overexposing the photoconductors, do not leave the front doors open for more than 10 minutes.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 If the paper is jammed behind the fuser, then remove the fuser:

> **Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so may cause your fingers to touch the roller underneath the fuser unit. Touching the fuser roller will damage the fuser.

a Turn the screws on the fuser to the left to loosen them.
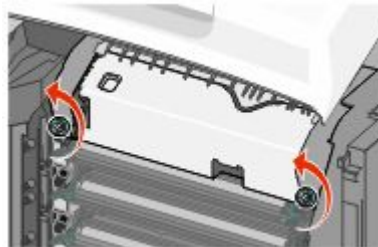
b Lift the handholds on each side of the fuser unit, and then pull forward to remove it.
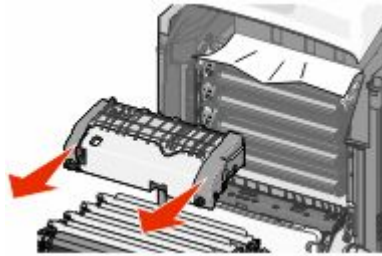
c Place the fuser on a flat surface.

3 Pull the paper gently out of the printer or up toward the standard exit bin to remove it.

4 Reinstall the fuser:

a Align the fuser unit using the handholds on each side, and then place it back into the printer.
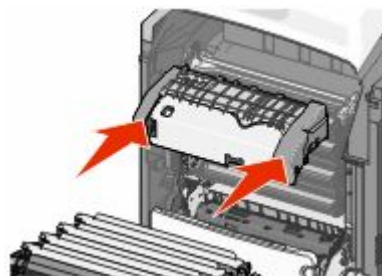
b Turn the screws to the right to fasten the fuser securely.
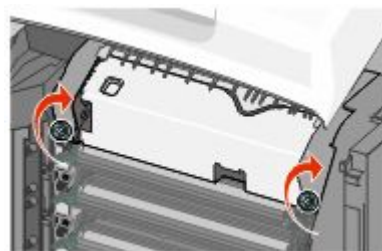
5 Close the lower front door, and then close the upper front door.

6 Touch **Continue**.

203 paper jam

1 Grasp paper that is visible in the standard exit bin, and pull it away from the bin.

2 Open the upper front door.

> ⚠ **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

3 Open the lower front door.

4 Grasp the paper on each side, and pull it out gently.
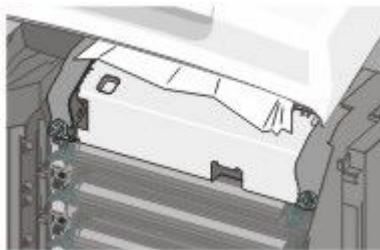
5 Close the lower front door.

6 Close the upper front door.

7 Touch **Continue**.

230 paper jam

1 Remove Tray 1.

2 Open the upper front door, and then open the lower front door.

> ⚠ **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

3 Pull the jam straight up to remove it.
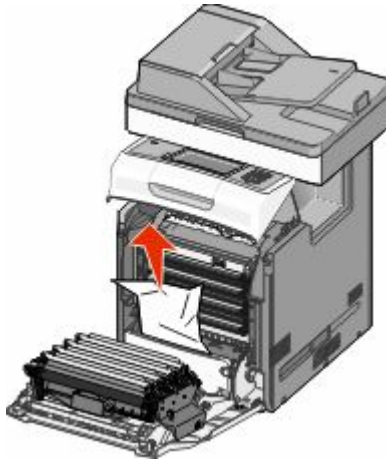
4 Pull out on the release tabs to allow the front door to split.
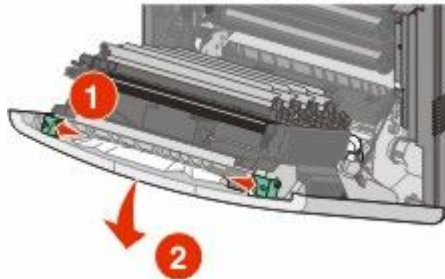
5 Pull straight out to remove any jammed paper.

6 Close the lower front door, and then close the upper front door.

7 Reinsert Tray 1.

8 Touch **Continue**.

24x paper jam

Paper jammed in Tray 1

1 Open Tray 1, and then pull the jammed pages straight up and out.
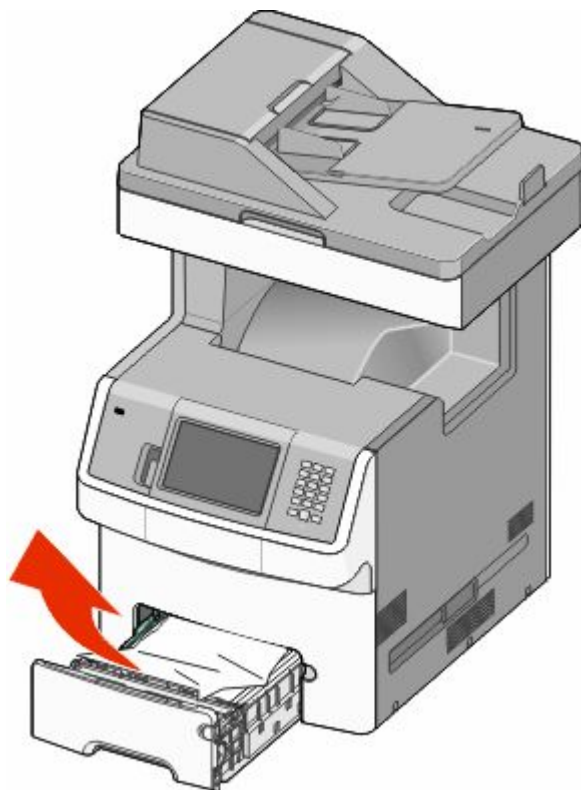
2 Close Tray 1.

3 Touch **Continue**.

Paper jammed in front of Tray 1

1 Open Tray 1, and then pull the jammed pages up and out.
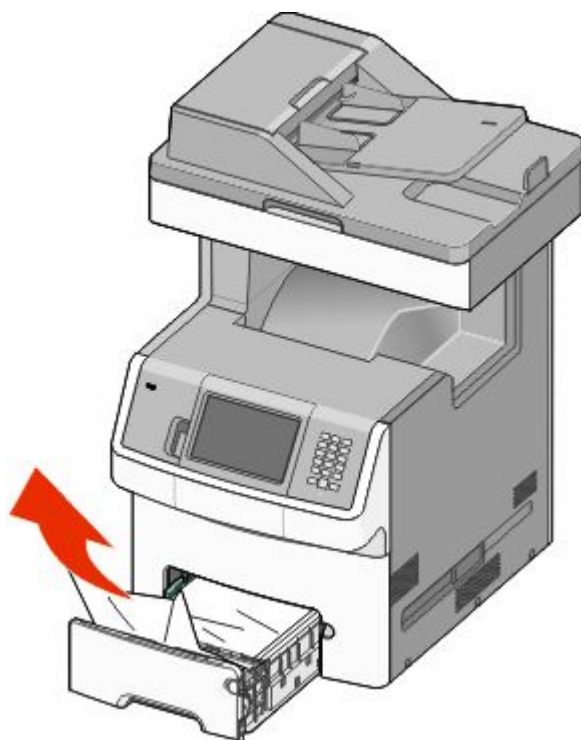
2 Close Tray 1.

3 Touch **Continue**.

Paper jammed in one of the optional trays

1 Open the specified tray, and then pull the jammed pages out.
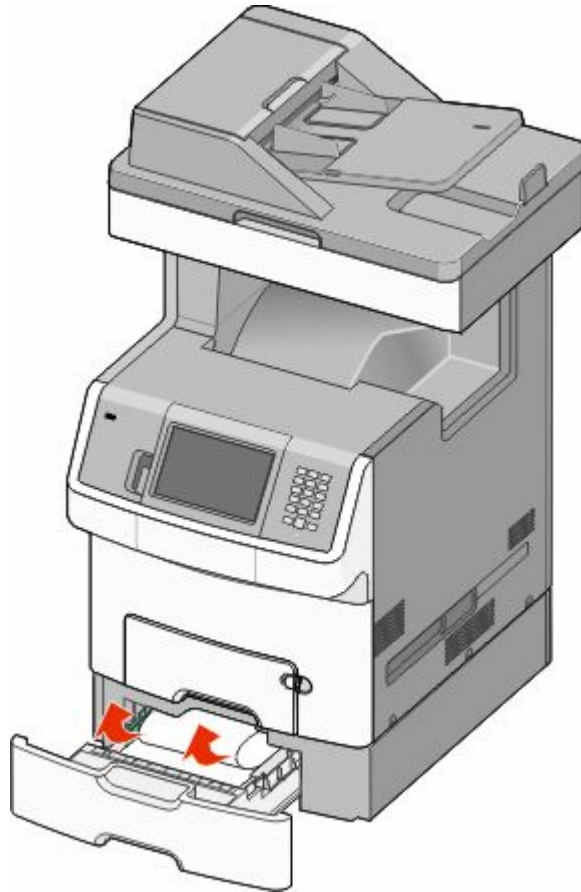
2 Close the tray.

3 Touch **Continue**.

250 paper jam

1 Press the paper release lever, and then remove the jammed pages from the multipurpose feeder.
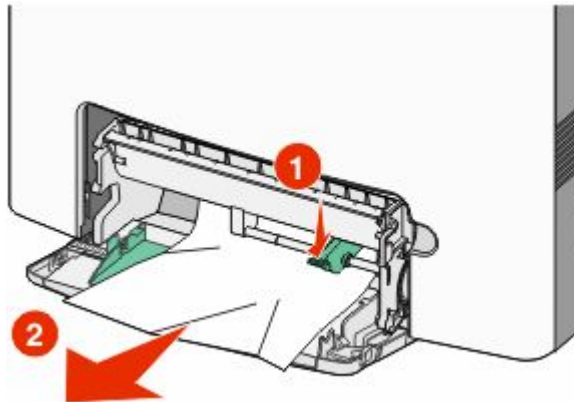
2 Load new paper into the multipurpose feeder.

3 Touch **Continue**.

290–294 paper jams

1 Remove all original documents from the ADF.

2 Open the ADF cover, and then remove any jammed paper.
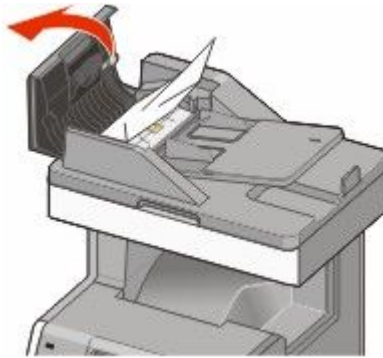
3 Close the ADF cover.

4 Open the duplex cover, and then remove any jammed paper.
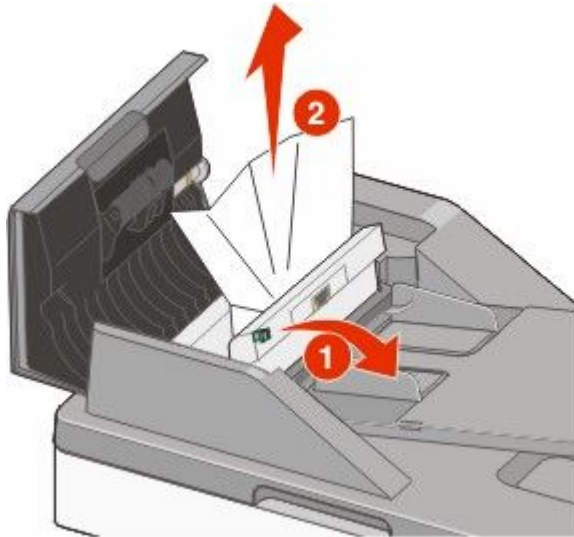
5 Open the scanner cover, and then remove any jammed pages.
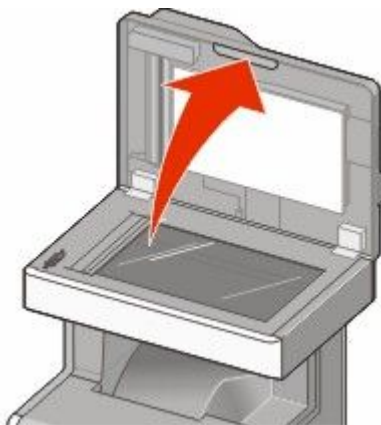
6 Close the scanner cover.

7 Touch **Restart Job**.

Solving printing problems

Multiple-language PDFs do not print

The documents contain unavailable fonts.

1 Open the document you want to print in Adobe Acrobat.

2 Click the printer icon.

The Print dialog appears.

3 Select **Print as image**.

4 Click **OK**.

Printer control panel display is blank or displays only diamonds

The printer self test failed. Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

If `Ready` does not appear, then turn the printer off and contact Customer Support.

Error message about reading USB drive appears

Make sure the USB drive is supported. For information regarding tested and approved USB flash memory devices, visit the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Jobs do not print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE THE PRINTER IS READY TO PRINT

Make sure `Ready` or `Power Saver` appears on the display before sending a job to print.

CHECK TO SEE IF THE STANDARD EXIT BIN IS FULL

Remove the stack of paper from the standard exit bin.

CHECK TO SEE IF THE PAPER TRAY IS EMPTY

Load paper in the tray.

MAKE SURE THE CORRECT PRINTER SOFTWARE IS INSTALLED

- Verify that you are using the correct printer software.
- If you are using a USB port, make sure you are running a supported operating system and using compatible printer software.

MAKE SURE THE INTERNAL PRINT SERVER IS INSTALLED PROPERLY AND WORKING

- Make sure the internal print server is properly installed and that the printer is connected to the network. For more information about installing a network printer, click **View User's Guide and Documentation** on the *Software and Documentation* CD.
- Print a network setup page and check that the status shows **Connected**. If the status is **Not Connected**, check the network cables, and then try printing the network setup page again. Contact your system support person to make sure the network is functioning correctly.

Copies of the printer software are also available on the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

MAKE SURE YOU ARE USING A RECOMMENDED PRINTER CABLE

For more information, visit the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

MAKE SURE PRINTER CABLES ARE SECURELY CONNECTED

Check the cable connections to the printer and print server to make sure they are secure.

For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.

Confidential and other held jobs do not print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

PARTIAL JOB, NO JOB, OR BLANK PAGE PRINTS

The print job may contain a formatting error or invalid data.
- Delete the print job, and then print it again.
- For PDF documents, recreate the PDF and then print it again.

If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading multiple job titles as duplicates and deleting all jobs except the first one.
- For Windows users, open Print Properties. From the Print and Hold dialog, select the "Keep duplicate documents" check box under the User name text box before entering a PIN number.
- For Macintosh users, save each print job, naming each job differently, and then send the individual jobs to the printer.

MAKE SURE THE PRINTER HAS SUFFICIENT MEMORY

Free up additional printer memory by scrolling through the list of held jobs and deleting some of them.

Job takes longer than expected to print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

REDUCE THE COMPLEXITY OF THE PRINT JOB

Reduce the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job.

CHANGE THE PAGE PROTECT SETTING TO OFF

1 On the home screen, touch ▨.

2 Touch **Settings**.

3 Touch **General Settings**.

4 Touch the down arrow until `Print Recovery` appears.

5 Touch **Print Recovery**.

6 Touch the arrows next to `Page Protect` until `Off` appears.

7 Touch **Submit**.

8 Touch 🏠 to return to the home screen.

CHANGE ENVIRONMENTAL SETTINGS

When using Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode settings, you may notice a reduction in performance. If you want to change the settings and need more information, then see "Using Eco-Mode" on page 58 or "Reducing printer noise" on page 59.

Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Type setting from the Paper menu.

2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

Incorrect characters print

Make sure the printer is not in Hex Trace mode. If `Ready Hex` appears on the display, you must exit Hex Trace mode before you can print your job. Turn the printer off and back on to exit Hex Trace mode.

Tray linking does not work

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

LOAD THE SAME SIZE AND TYPE OF PAPER

- Load the same size and type of paper in each tray to be linked.
- Move the paper guides to the correct positions for the paper size loaded in each tray.

USE THE SAME PAPER SIZE AND PAPER TYPE SETTINGS

- Print a menu settings page and compare the settings for each tray.
- If necessary, adjust the settings from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Note: The standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose tray do not automatically sense the paper size. The Paper Size setting for the standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose tray must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set for all trays from the Paper Type menu. The Paper Type menu and the Paper Size menu are both available from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Large jobs do not collate

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE COLLATE IS SET TO ON

From the Finishing menu or Print Properties, set Collate to On.

Note: Setting Collate to Off in the software overrides the setting in the Finishing menu.

REDUCE THE COMPLEXITY OF THE PRINT JOB

Reduce the complexity of the print job by eliminating the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job.

MAKE SURE THE PRINTER HAS ENOUGH MEMORY

Add printer memory or an optional hard disk.

Unexpected page breaks occur

INCREASE THE PRINT TIMEOUT VALUE

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch ▦.

3 Touch **Settings**.

4 Touch **General Settings**.

5 Touch the down arrow until `Timeouts` appears.

6 Touch **Timeouts**.

7 Touch the left or right arrow next to `Print Timeout` until the desired value appears.

8 Touch **Submit**.

9 Touch 🏠.

Solving copy problems

Copier does not respond

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

CHECK THE POWER

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and `Ready` appears.

Scanner unit does not close

Make sure there are no obstructions:

1 Lift the scanner unit.

2 Remove any obstruction keeping the scanner unit open.

3 Lower the scanner unit.

Poor copy quality

These are some examples of poor copy quality:
- Blank pages
- Checkerboard pattern
- Distorted graphics or pictures
- Missing characters
- Faded print
- Dark print
- Skewed lines
- Smudges
- Streaks
- Unexpected characters
- White lines in print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

THE TONER MAY BE LOW

When `88 Cartridge low` appears or when the print becomes faded, replace the print cartridge.

THE SCANNER GLASS MAY BE DIRTY

Clean the scanner glass with a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water. For more information, see "Cleaning the scanner glass" on page 226.

THE COPY IS TOO LIGHT OR TOO DARK

Adjust the density of the copy.

CHECK THE QUALITY OF THE ORIGINAL DOCUMENT

Make sure the quality of the original document is satisfactory.

CHECK THE DOCUMENT PLACEMENT

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

UNWANTED TONER IS IN THE BACKGROUND

- Increase the background removal setting.
- Adjust the darkness to a lighter setting.

PATTERNS (MOIRÉ) APPEAR IN THE OUTPUT

- On the Copy screen, select the Text/Photo or Printed Image icon.
- Rotate the original document on the scanner glass.
- On the Copy screen, adjust the scale setting.

TEXT IS LIGHT OR DISAPPEARING

- On the Copy screen, touch the Text icon.
- Decrease the background removal setting.
- Increase the contrast setting.
- Decrease the shadow detail setting.

THE OUTPUT APPEARS WASHED OUT OR OVEREXPOSED

- On the Copy screen, select the Printed Image icon.
- Decrease the background removal setting.

Partial document or photo copies

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DOCUMENT PLACEMENT

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting from the Paper menu.

2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
- For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Solving scanner problems

Checking an unresponsive scanner

If your scanner is not responding, then make sure:
- The printer is turned on.
- The printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the host computer, print server, option, or other network device.
- The power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off by any switch or breaker.
- The printer is not plugged into any surge protectors, uninterrupted power supplies, or extension cords.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.

Once you have checked each of these possibilities, turn the printer off and then back on. This often fixes the problem with the scanner.

Scan was not successful

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE CABLE CONNECTIONS

Make sure the network or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.

AN ERROR MAY HAVE OCCURRED IN THE PROGRAM

Turn off and then restart the computer.

Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

OTHER SOFTWARE PROGRAMS MAY BE INTERFERING WITH SCANNING

Close all programs not being used.

THE SCAN RESOLUTION MAY BE SET TOO HIGH

Select a lower scan resolution.

Poor scanned image quality

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

THE SCANNER GLASS MAY BE DIRTY

Clean the scanner glass with a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water. For more information, see "Cleaning the scanner glass" on page 226.

ADJUST THE SCAN RESOLUTION

Increase the resolution of the scan for a higher quality output.

CHECK THE QUALITY OF THE ORIGINAL DOCUMENT

Make sure the quality of the original document is satisfactory.

CHECK THE DOCUMENT PLACEMENT

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Partial document or photo scans

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DOCUMENT PLACEMENT

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting from the Paper menu.

2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:

- For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Cannot scan from a computer

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

CHECK THE POWER

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and `Ready` appears.

CHECK THE CABLE CONNECTIONS

Make sure the network or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.

Solving fax problems

Caller ID is not shown

Contact your telecommunications company to verify that your telephone line is subscribed to the caller ID service.

If your region supports multiple caller ID patterns, you may have to change the default setting. There are two settings available: FSK (pattern 1) and DTMF (pattern 2). The availability of these settings by way of the Fax menu depends on whether your country or region supports multiple caller ID patterns. Contact your telecommunications company to determine which pattern or switch setting to use.

Cannot send or receive a fax

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

CHECK THE POWER

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and `Ready` appears.

CHECK THE PRINTER CONNECTIONS

Make sure the cable connections for the following hardware are secure, if applicable:

- Telephone
- Handset
- Answering machine

CHECK THE TELEPHONE WALL JACK

1. Plug a telephone into the wall jack.

2. Listen for a dial tone.

3. If you do not hear a dial tone, then plug a different telephone into the wall jack.

4. If you still do not hear a dial tone, then plug a telephone into a different wall jack.

5. If you hear a dial tone, then connect the printer to that wall jack.

REVIEW THIS DIGITAL PHONE SERVICE CHECKLIST

The fax modem is an analog device. Certain devices can be connected to the printer so that digital telephone services can be used.

- If you are using an ISDN telephone service, then connect the printer to an analog telephone port (an R-interface port) on an ISDN terminal adapter. For more information and to request an R-interface port, contact your ISDN provider.
- If you are using DSL, then connect to a DSL filter or router that will support analog use. For more information, contact your DSL provider.
- If you are using a PBX telephone service, then make sure you are connecting to an analog connection on the PBX. If none exists, consider installing an analog telephone line for the fax machine.

CHECK FOR A DIAL TONE

- Place a test call to the telephone number to which you want to send a fax to make sure that it is working correctly.
- If the telephone line is being used by another device, then wait until the other device is finished before sending a fax.
- If you are using the On Hook Dial feature, then turn up the volume to verify a dial tone.

TEMPORARILY DISCONNECT OTHER EQUIPMENT

To ensure the printer is working correctly, connect it directly to the telephone line. Disconnect any answering machines, computers with modems, or telephone line splitters.

CHECK FOR JAMS

Clear any jams, and then make sure that `Ready` appears.

Temporarily disable Call Waiting

Call Waiting can disrupt fax transmissions. Disable this feature before sending or receiving a fax. Call your telephone company to obtain the keypad sequence for temporarily disabling Call Waiting.

Voice Mail service may be interfering with the fax transmission

Voice Mail offered through your local telephone company may disrupt fax transmissions. To enable both Voice Mail and the printer to answer calls, you may want to consider adding a second telephone line for the printer.

The printer memory may be full

1   Dial the fax number.

2   Scan the original document one page at a time.

Can send but not receive faxes

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check to see if the paper tray is empty

Load paper in the tray.

Check the ring count delay settings

The ring count delay sets the number of times the phone line rings before the printer answers. If you have extension phones on the same line as the printer, or subscribe to the telephone company's Distinctive Ring service, then keep the Ring Delay setting at 4.

1   Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2   Click **Settings**.

3   Click **Fax Settings**.

4   Click **Analog Fax Setup**.

5   In the Rings to Answer box, enter the number of times you want the phone to ring before answering.

6   Click **Submit**.

The toner may be low

`88 Cartridge low` appears when the toner is low.

Can receive but not send faxes

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

THE PRINTER IS NOT IN FAX MODE

On the home screen, touch **Fax** to put the printer in Fax mode.

THE DOCUMENT IS NOT LOADED PROPERLY

Load the original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

MAKE SURE THE SHORTCUT NUMBER IS SET UP PROPERLY

- Check to make sure the shortcut number has been programmed for the number that you want to dial.
- As an alternative, dial the telephone number manually.

Received fax has poor print quality

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

RE-SEND THE DOCUMENT

Ask the person who sent you the fax to:
- Check that the quality of the original document is satisfactory.
- Resend the fax. There may have been a problem with the quality of the telephone line connection.
- Increase the fax scan resolution, if possible.

THE TONER MAY BE LOW

When `88 Cartridge low` appears or when you experience faded print, replace the cartridge.

MAKE SURE THE FAX TRANSMISSION SPEED IS NOT SET TOO HIGH

Decrease the incoming fax transmission speed:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Click **Fax Settings**.

4 Click **Analog Fax Setup**.

5 In the Max Speed box, click on one of the following:

> **2400**
>
> **4800**
>
> **9600**
>
> **14400**
>
> **33600**

6 Click **Submit**.

Solving option problems

Option does not operate correctly or quits after it is installed

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

RESET THE PRINTER

Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

CHECK TO SEE IF THE OPTION IS CONNECTED TO THE PRINTER

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Unplug the printer from the wall outlet.

3 Check the connection between the option and the printer.

MAKE SURE THE OPTION IS INSTALLED

Print a menu settings page and check to see if the option is listed in the Installed Options list. If the option is not listed, then reinstall it.

MAKE SURE THE OPTION IS AVAILABLE IN THE PRINTER DRIVER

It may be necessary to manually add the option in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see "Updating available options in the printer driver" on page 44.

MAKE SURE THE OPTION IS SELECTED

From the program you are using, select the option. Mac OS 9 users should make sure the printer is set up in the Chooser.

Trays / Drawers

MAKE SURE THE PAPER IS LOADED CORRECTLY

1 Open the paper tray.

2 Check for paper jams or misfeeds.

3 Make sure the paper tray closes properly.

RESET THE PRINTER

Turn the printer off. Wait 10 seconds. Turn the printer back on.

Flash memory card

Make sure the flash memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

Hard disk with adapter

Make sure the hard disk is securely connected to the printer system board.

Internal Solutions Port

If the Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP) does not operate correctly, then these are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE ISP CONNECTIONS

- Make sure the ISP is securely attached to the printer system board.
- Make sure the cable is securely connected to the correct connector.

CHECK THE CABLE

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

MAKE SURE THE NETWORK SOFTWARE IS CONFIGURED CORRECTLY

For information about installing software for network printing, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD

Internal print server

If the internal print server does not operate correctly, these are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PRINT SERVER CONNECTIONS

- Make sure the internal print server is attached securely to the printer system board.
- Make sure you are using the correct (optional) cable and that it is securely connected.

MAKE SURE THE NETWORK SOFTWARE IS CONFIGURED CORRECTLY

For information about installing software for network printing, click **Additional** on the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then select the **Networking Guide** link under **Publications on this CD**.

Memory card

Make sure the memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

USB/parallel interface card

Check the USB/parallel interface card connections:

- Make sure the USB/parallel interface card is securely connected to the printer system board.
- Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

Solving paper feed problems

Paper frequently jams

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER

Use recommended paper and other specialty media. For more information, see the chapter about paper and specialty media guidelines.

MAKE SURE THERE IS NOT TOO MUCH PAPER IN THE PAPER TRAY

Make sure the stack of paper you load does not exceed the maximum stack height indicated in the tray or on the multipurpose feeder.

CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

HAS THE PAPER ABSORBED MOISTURE DUE TO HIGH HUMIDITY?

- Load paper from a fresh package.
- Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared

CHECK THE PAPER PATH

The paper path is not clear. Clear jammed paper from the entire paper path, and then touch **Continue**.

Page that jammed does not reprint after you clear the jam

TURN ON JAM RECOVERY

In the Setup menu, Jam Recovery is set to Off. Set Jam Recovery to Auto or On:

1 Make sure the printer is on and `Ready` appears.

2 On the home screen, touch .

3 Touch **Settings**.

4 Touch **General Settings**.

5 Touch the down arrow until `Print Recovery` appears.

6 Touch **Print Recovery**.

7 Touch the right arrow next to `Jam Recovery` until `On` or `Auto` appears.

8 Touch **Submit**.

9 Touch ⌂.

Solving print quality problems

The information in the following topics may help you solve print quality problems. If these suggestions do not correct the problem, contact Customer Support. You may have a printer part that requires adjustment or replacement.

Isolating print quality problems

To help isolate print quality problems, print the print quality test pages:

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Load letter- or A4-size paper in the tray.

3 Hold down ② and ⑥ while turning the printer on.

4 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.

5 Touch **Print Quality Pages**.

6 Touch **Print Quality Pages** again.

The print quality test pages print.

7 Touch **Back**.

8 Touch **Exit Config Menu**.

Blank pages
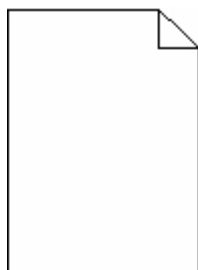
These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

PACKING MATERIAL MAY BE ON THE TONER CARTRIDGE

Remove the toner cartridge and make sure the packing material is properly removed. Reinstall the toner cartridge.

TONER IS LOW

- Remove the toner cartridge from the printer. Shake the cartridge back and forth several times, and then reinstall it.
- Install a new toner cartridge.

A TONER CARTRIDGE IS DEFECTIVE OR EMPTY

Replace the defective or empty toner cartridge.

THE PRINTER REQUIRES SERVICING

Call for service.

Characters have jagged or uneven edges

If you are using downloaded fonts, verify that the fonts are supported by the printer, the host computer, and the software program.

Color misregistration

Color has shifted outside of the appropriate area or has been superimposed over another color area. These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

RECALIBRATE THE PRINTER

From the printer control panel Quality menu, perform Color Adjust.

REINSTALL THE PHOTOCONDUCTOR

Remove and reinstall the photoconductor.

ADJUST THE COLOR ALIGNMENT

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Load letter- or A4-size paper in the tray.

3 Hold down ② and ⑥ while turning the printer on.

4 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.

5 Touch the down arrow until `Color Alignment` appears.

6 Touch **Color Alignment**.

7 Touch **Color Alignment** again.

The color alignment pages print.

8 Touch the down arrow until `Color Alignment` appears, and then touch **Color Alignment**.

9 From the printed sheet, find the straightest of the 20 lines beside the letter A.

10 Touch the left or right arrow to select that number.

11 Repeat steps 9 and 10 to align sets B through L.

12 Touch **Back**.

13 Touch **Exit Config Menu**.

Note: If the issue is not resolved, then recalibrate again. If necessary, adjust the color alignment again.

Clipped images

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE GUIDES

Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting from the Paper menu.

2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
- For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Fine horizontal lines appear on color pages

You may notice fine, horizontal lines in photographs or pages with a high concentration of color. This can occur when the printer is in Quiet Mode. To fix this, set Quiet Mode to **Off (Image/Photo)**.

Ghost images

ABCDE
ABCDE
ABCDE

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

THE PHOTOCONDUCTOR IS NOT FUNCTIONING PROPERLY

- Make sure the Paper Type setting is correct for the media that you are using.
- Replace the photoconductor.

TONER IS LOW

Replace the toner cartridge.

Gray background

ABCDE
ABCDE
ABCDE
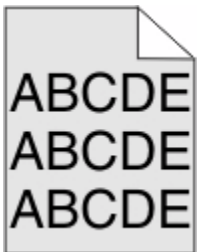
These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE TONER DARKNESS SETTING

Select a different toner darkness setting in the printer software before sending the job to print.

A TONER CARTRIDGE MAY BE WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the worn or defective toner cartridge.

Incorrect margins

ABC
DEF

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting from the Paper menu.

2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line
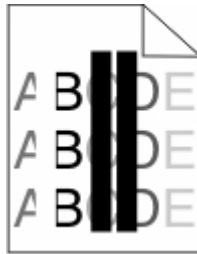
These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

A TONER CARTRIDGE IS DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective toner cartridge.

A PHOTOCONDUCTOR IS DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective photoconductor.

THE TRANSFER MODULE IS DEFECTIVE

Replace the transfer module.

THE PRINTHEAD LENSES ARE DIRTY

Clean the printhead lenses.

Paper curl

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Type setting from the Paper menu.

2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

THE PAPER HAS ABSORBED MOISTURE DUE TO HIGH HUMIDITY

- Load paper from a fresh package.
- Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Print irregularities
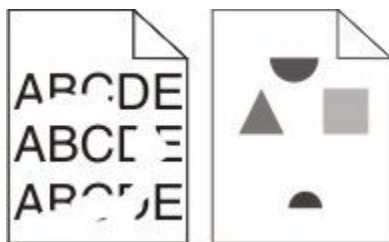
These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

THE PAPER MAY HAVE ABSORBED MOISTURE DUE TO HIGH HUMIDITY

Load paper from a fresh package.

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings match the type of paper that you are using.

CHECK THE PAPER

Avoid textured paper with rough finishes.

A TONER CARTRIDGE, THE TRANSFER MODULE, OR THE FUSER IS WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the toner cartridge, the transfer module, or the fuser.

Print is too dark

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DARKNESS, BRIGHTNESS, AND CONTRAST SETTINGS

The Toner Darkness setting is too dark, the RGB Brightness setting is too dark, or the RGB Contrast setting is too high.

- From the printer control panel, change these settings from the Quality menu.
- For Windows users, change these settings from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, change these settings from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

THE PRINTER MAY NOT HAVE RECALIBRATED RECENTLY

Perform Color Adjust from the printer control panel Quality menu.

A TONER CARTRIDGE IS WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the worn or defective toner cartridge.

Print is too light

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DARKNESS, BRIGHTNESS, AND CONTRAST SETTINGS

The Toner Darkness setting is too light, the RGB Brightness setting is too light, or the RGB Contrast setting is too low.

- From the printer control panel, change these settings from the Quality menu.
- For Windows users, change these settings from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, change these settings from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

THE PRINTER MAY NOT HAVE RECALIBRATED RECENTLY

Perform Color Adjust from the printer control panel Quality menu.

CHECK THE PAPER

- Load paper from a new package.
- Avoid textured paper with rough finishes.
- Make sure the paper you load in the trays is not damp.
- Make sure the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings match the type of paper that you are using.

COLOR SAVER IS ON

Turn Color Saver off in the printer control panel Quality menu.

A TONER CARTRIDGE IS LOW

- Remove the specified cartridge from the printer. Shake the cartridge back and forth several times, and then reinstall it.
- Install a new toner cartridge.

A TONER CARTRIDGE IS WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the worn or defective toner cartridge.

Repeating defects
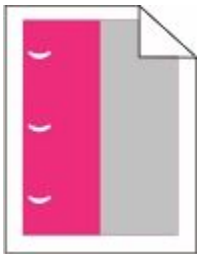
These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

REPEATING MARKS OCCUR IN ONLY ONE COLOR AND MULTIPLE TIMES ON THE PAGE

Replace a toner cartridge if the defects occur every:
- 33.0 mm (1.30 in.)
- 35.3 mm (1.39 in.)

Replace a photoconductor if the defects occur every:
- 28.3 mm (1.11 in.)
- 72.4 mm (2.85 in.)

REPEATING MARKS OCCUR IN ALL COLORS AND MULTIPLE TIMES ON THE PAGE

Replace the fuser if the defects occur every:

- 47.4 mm (1.87 in.)
- 94.8 mm (3.73 in.)
- 113.0 mm (4.45 in.)

Skewed print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

CHECK THE PAPER

Make sure you are using paper that meets the printer specifications.

Solid color pages
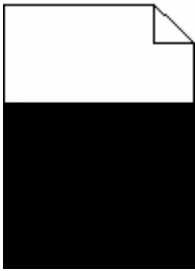
These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE THE PHOTOCONDUCTORS ARE PROPERLY INSTALLED

Remove and then reinstall the photoconductors.

THE PHOTOCONDUCTOR IS DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective photoconductor.

THE PRINTER REQUIRES SERVICING

Call for service.

Streaked horizontal lines

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

A TONER CARTRIDGE IS DEFECTIVE, EMPTY, OR WORN

Replace the toner cartridge.

THE FUSER IS DEFECTIVE OR WORN

Replace the fuser.

A PHOTOCONDUCTOR MAY BE DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective photoconductor.

Streaked vertical lines

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

THE TONER IS SMEARED

Select another tray or feeder to feed paper for the job:
- From the printer control panel, select the Default Source from the Paper Menu.
- For Windows users, select the paper source from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, select the paper source from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

A TONER CARTRIDGE IS DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective toner cartridge.

THE TRANSFER MODULE IS WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the transfer module.

Toner fog or background shading appears on the page

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

A TONER CARTRIDGE IS DEFECTIVE OR INSTALLED INCORRECTLY

Reinstall or replace the defective toner cartridge.

THE TRANSFER MODULE IS WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the transfer module.

A PHOTOCONDUCTOR IS WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the worn or defective photoconductor.

THE FUSER IS WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the fuser.

TONER IS IN THE PAPER PATH

Contact Customer Support.

Toner rubs off
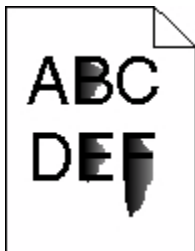
These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray.

CHECK THE PAPER WEIGHT AND PAPER TEXTURE SETTINGS

Change the Paper Weight from Normal to Heavy. If necessary, change the Paper Texture from Normal to Rough in the printer control panel Paper menu.

THE FUSER IS WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the fuser.

Toner specks
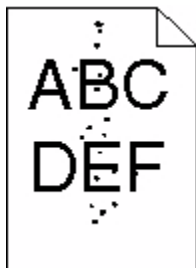
These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

THE TONER CARTRIDGES ARE WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective or worn cartridges.

THERE IS TONER IN THE PAPER PATH

Contact Customer Support.

Transparency print quality is poor

Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE TRANSPARENCIES

Use only transparencies recommended by the printer manufacturer.

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Type setting from the Paper menu.

2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

Uneven print density

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

A **TONER CARTRIDGE MAY BE WORN OR DEFECTIVE**

Replace the worn or defective toner cartridge.

A **PHOTOCONDUCTOR MAY BE DEFECTIVE**

Replace the defective photoconductor.

Solving color quality problems

This section helps answer some basic color-related questions and describes how some of the features provided in the Quality Menu can be used to solve typical color problems.

FAQ about color printing

What is RGB color?

Red, green, and blue light can be added together in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, red and green can be combined to create yellow. Televisions and computer monitors create colors in this manner. RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue needed to produce a certain color.

What is CMYK color?

Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, cyan and yellow can be combined to create green. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner. CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black needed to reproduce a particular color.

How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software programs typically specify document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. Additionally, they allow users to modify the color of each object in a document. For more information, see the software program Help topics.

How does the printer know what color to print?

When a user prints a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer. The color information is passed through color conversion tables that translate the color into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner needed to produce the desired color. The object information determines the application of color conversion tables. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

Should I use PostScript or PCL emulation printer software? What settings should I use for the best color?

The PostScript driver is strongly recommended for best color quality. The default settings in the PostScript driver provide the preferred color quality for the majority of printouts.

Why doesn't the printed color match the color I see on the computer screen?

The color conversion tables used in Auto Color Correction mode generally approximate the colors of a standard computer monitor. However, because of technology differences that exist between printers and monitors, there are many colors that can also be affected by monitor variations and lighting conditions. For recommendations on how the printer color sample pages may be useful in solving certain color-matching problems, see the question, "How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?"

The printed page appears tinted. Can I adjust the color?

Sometimes a printed page may appear tinted (for example, everything printed seems to be too red). This can be caused by environmental conditions, paper type, lighting conditions, or user preference. In these instances, adjust the Color Balance setting to create a more preferable color. Color Balance provides the user with the ability to make subtle adjustments to the amount of toner being used in each color plane. Selecting positive or negative values for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (from the Color Balance menu) will slightly increase or decrease the amount of toner used for the chosen color. For example, if a printed page has a red tint, then decreasing both magenta and yellow could potentially improve the color balance.

My color transparencies seem dark when they are projected. Is there anything I can do to improve the color?

This problem most commonly occurs when projecting transparencies with reflective overhead projectors. To obtain the highest projected color quality, transmissive overhead projectors are recommended. If a reflective projector must be used, then adjusting the Toner Darkness setting to 1, 2, or 3 will lighten the transparency. Make sure to print on the recommended type of color transparencies.

What is manual color correction?

When manual color correction is enabled, the printer employs user-selected color conversion tables to process objects. However, Color Correction must be set to Manual, or no user-defined color conversion will be implemented. Manual color correction settings are specific to the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations).

Notes:

- Manual color correction is not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. It is also not effective in situations in which the software program or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors.
- The color conversion tables—applied to each object when Color Correction is set to Auto—generate preferred colors for the majority of documents.

To manually apply a different color conversion table:

1 From the Quality menu, select **Color Correction**, and then select **Manual**.

2 From the Quality menu, select **Manual Color**, and then select the appropriate color conversion table for the affected object type.

Manual Color menu

Object type	Color conversion tables
RGB Image RGB Text RGB Graphics	- **Vivid**—Produces brighter, more saturated colors and may be applied to all incoming color formats. - **sRGB Display**—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Black toner usage is optimized for printing photographs. - **Display—True Black**—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Uses only black toner to create all levels of neutral gray. - **sRGB Vivid**—Provides an increased color saturation for the sRGB Display color correction. Black usage is optimized for printing business graphics. - **Off**—No color correction is implemented.

Object type	Color conversion tables
CMYK Image CMYK Text CMYK Graphics	• **US CMYK**—Applies color correction to approximate the SWOP (Specifications for Web Offset Publishing) color output. • **Euro CMYK**—Applies color correction to approximated EuroScale color output. • **Vivid CMYK**—Increases the color saturation of the US CMYK color correction setting. • **Off**—No color correction is implemented.

How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

From the printer Quality menu, nine types of Color Samples sets are available. These are also available from the Color Samples page of the Embedded Web Server. Selecting any sample set generates a multiple-page printout consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Either a CMYK or RGB combination is located on each box, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

By examining Color Samples sets, a user can identify the box whose color is the closest to the desired color. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software program. For more information, see the software program Help topics. Manual color correction may be necessary to utilize the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples set to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on the Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual), the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations). When the printer Color Correction setting is set to Off, the color is based on the print job information; and no color conversion is implemented.

Note: The Color Samples pages are not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. Additionally, certain situations exist in which the software program or the computer operating system adjusts the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the program through color management. The resulting printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

What are detailed Color Samples and how do I access them?

Detailed Color Samples sets are available only through the Embedded Web Server of a network printer. A detailed Color Samples set contains a range of shades (displayed as colored boxes) that are similar to a user-defined RGB or CMYK value. The likeness of the colors in the set are dependent on the value entered in the RGB or CMYK Increment box.

To access a detailed Color Samples set from the Embedded Web Server:

1 Open a Web browser.

2 In the address bar, type the network printer IP address.

3 Click **Configuration**.

4 Click **Color Samples**.

5 Click **Detailed Options** to narrow the set to one color range.

6 When the Detailed Options page appears, select a color conversion table.

7 Enter the RGB or CMYK color number.

8 Enter an Increment value from 1–255.

    Note: The closer the value is to 1, the narrower the color sample range will appear.

9 Click **Print** to print the detailed Color Samples set.

Embedded Web Server does not open

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE NETWORK CONNECTIONS

Make sure the printer and computer are turned on and connected to the same network.

CHECK THE NETWORK SETTINGS

Depending on the network settings, you may need to type `https://` instead of `http://` before the printer IP address to access the Embedded Web Server. For more information, see your system administrator.

Contacting Customer Support

When you call Customer Support, describe the problem you are experiencing, the message on the display, and the troubleshooting steps you have already taken to find a solution.

You need to know your printer model type and serial number. For more information, see the label on the inside top front cover of the printer. The serial number is also listed on the menu settings page.

In the U.S. or Canada, call (1-800-539-6275). For other countries/regions, visit the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Notices

Product information

Product name:

Lexmark X730 Series

Machine type:

7526

Model(s):

235, 275, 295, 436, 476, 496, 636, 676

Edition notice

May 2009

The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit **support.lexmark.com**.

For information on supplies and downloads, visit **www.lexmark.com**.

If you don't have access to the Internet, you can contact Lexmark by mail:

Lexmark International, Inc.
Bldg 004-2/CSC
740 New Circle Road NW
Lexington, KY 40550
USA

© 2009 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

This software and any accompanying documentation provided under this agreement are commercial computer software and documentation developed exclusively at private expense.

Trademarks

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, MarkNet, and MarkVision are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

MarkTrack and PrintCryption are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of these companies:

Albertus	The Monotype Corporation plc
Antique Olive	Monsieur Marcel OLIVE
Apple-Chancery	Apple Computer, Inc.
Arial	The Monotype Corporation plc
CG Times	Based on Times New Roman under license from The Monotype Corporation plc, is a product of Agfa Corporation
Chicago	Apple Computer, Inc.
Clarendon	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Eurostile	Nebiolo
Geneva	Apple Computer, Inc.
GillSans	The Monotype Corporation plc
Helvetica	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Hoefler	Jonathan Hoefler Type Foundry
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Bookman	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Mona Lisa	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Zapf Chancery	International Typeface Corporation
Joanna	The Monotype Corporation plc
Marigold	Arthur Baker
Monaco	Apple Computer, Inc.
New York	Apple Computer, Inc.
Oxford	Arthur Baker
Palatino	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

Stempel Garamond	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Taffy	Agfa Corporation
Times New Roman	The Monotype Corporation plc
Univers	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class A limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Note: To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class A computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	53 dBA
Scanning	54 dBA
Copying	54 dBA
Ready	35 dBA

Values are subject to change. See **www.lexmark.com** for current values.

Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive

The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products. If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com** for your local sales office phone number.

Static sensitivity notice

This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.

Laser notice

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) laser that is nominally a 7 milliwatt gallium arsenide laser operating in the wavelength of 655-675 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

Laser advisory label

A laser notice label may be affixed to this printer as shown:

Power consumption

Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Printing	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	490 W (X734): 560 W (X736, X738)
Copying	The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.	530 W (X734): 600 W (X736, X738)
Scanning	The product is scanning hard-copy documents.	90 W (X734): 105 W (X736, X738)
Ready	The product is waiting for a print job.	60 W (X734): 70 W (X736, X738)
Power Saver	The product is in energy-saving mode.	24 W (X734): 26 W (X736, X738)
Off	The product is plugged into a wall outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0 W

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See **www.lexmark.com** for current values.

Power Saver

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called Power Saver. The Power Saver Mode is equivalent to the EPA Sleep Mode. The Power Saver Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Power Saver Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the Power Saver Timeout.

Factory default Power Saver Timeout for this product (in minutes):	30

By using the configuration menus, the Power Saver Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 240 minutes. Setting the Power Saver Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Power Saver Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the wall outlet.

Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility and safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

A declaration of conformity with the requirements of the directives has been signed by the Director of Manufacturing and Technical Support, Lexmark International, Inc., S.A., Boigny, France.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe A est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

Regulatory notices for telecommunication terminal equipment

This section contains regulatory information pertaining to products that contain telecommunication terminal equipment such as facsimile.

Notice to users of the US telephone network: FCC requirements

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. at **www.lexmark.com** or your Lexmark representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. See the previous paragraph for contact information.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

South Africa telecommunications notice

This modem must be used in conjunction with an approved surge protection device when connected to the PSTN.

Notice to users of the Canadian telephone network

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications. The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The terminus of an interface may consist of any combination of devices, subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five. The modem REN is located on the rear of the equipment on the product labeling.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industrie Canada. Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) fournit une indication du nombre maximum de terminaux pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN du modem est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit située à l'arrière de l'équipement.

Les compagnies de téléphone constatent que les surtensions électriques, en particulier celles dues à la foudre, entraînent d'importants dégâts sur les terminaux privés connectés à des sources d'alimentation CA. Il s'agit-là d'un problème majeur d'échelle nationale. En conséquence, il vous est recommandé de brancher un parasurtenseur dans la prise de courant à laquelle l'équipement est connecté. Utilisez un parasurtenseur répondant à des caractéristiques nominales satisfaisantes et certifié par le laboratoire d'assureurs UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), un autre laboratoire agréé de type NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory) ou un organisme de certification agréé dans votre région ou pays. Ceci prévient tout endommagement de l'équipement causé par les orages et autres surtensions électriques.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

Notice to users of the New Zealand telephone network

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom's 111 Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.

This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Telecom customers.

Some parameters required for compliance with Telecom's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Telecom's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

Using this product in Switzerland

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 14B5109 or 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland. The Lexmark filter must be used, as metering pulses are present on all analog telephone lines in Switzerland.

Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (n° de référence Lexmark : 14B5109 ou 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse. Ce filtre doit être utilisé pour toute installation car ces impulsions existent sur toutes les lignes téléphoniques suisses.

Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 14B5109 oder 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden. Die Verwendung des Lexmark Filters ist obligatorisch, da in allen analogen Telefonleitungen in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte vorhanden sind.

Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 14B5109 o 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera. È necessario utilizzare il filtro Lexmark poiché gli impulsi remoti sono presenti su tutte le linee analogiche in Svizzera.

Notice to Users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.

$$\epsilon\epsilon$$

A declaration of conformity with the requirements of the directives is available from the Director of Manufacturing and Technical Support, Lexmark International, S. A., Boigny, France.

Refer to the table at the end of the Notices section for further compliance information.

Radio interference notice

Warning

This is a product that complies with the emission requirements of EN55022 Class A limits and immunity requirements of EN55024. This product is not intended to be used in residential/domestic environments.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

Notice to users in Brazil

Este equipamento opera em carater secundario, isto e, nao tem direito a protecao contra interferencia prejudicial, mesmo de estacoes do mesmo tipo, e nao pode causar interferencia a sistemas operando em carater primario. (Res.ANATEL 282/2001).

Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

Taiwan NCC RF notice statement

Notice to users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.

$$\epsilon\epsilon$$

A declaration of conformity with the requirements of the directives is available from the Director of Manufacturing and Technical Support, Lexmark International, S. A., Boigny, France. Refer to the table at the end of the Notices section for further compliance information.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.

$$\epsilon\epsilon\oslash$$

Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

A declaration of conformity with the requirements of the directives is available from the Director of Manufacturing and Technical Support, Lexmark International, S. A., Boigny, France. Refer to the table at the end of the Notices section for further compliance information.

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.

Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Statement of Limited Warranty

Lexmark X730 Series

Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as "Remarketer."

Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

—Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts

—Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web at **www.lexmark.com/support**.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

Extent of limited warranty

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

—Modification or unauthorized attachments

—Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance

—Unsuitable physical or operating environment

—Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer

—Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle

—Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications

—Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts

—Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.

Limitation of liability

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. **IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

Additional rights

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

LEXMARK SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENTS

PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT: BY USING THIS PRODUCT, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENTS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THE TERMS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENTS, PROMPTLY RETURN THE PRODUCT UNUSED AND REQUEST A REFUND OF THE AMOUNT YOU PAID. IF YOU ARE INSTALLING THIS PRODUCT FOR USE BY OTHER PARTIES, YOU AGREE TO INFORM THE USERS THAT USE OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS.

DEVICE LICENSE AGREEMENT

The patented printer is licensed for, and designed to work with only genuine Lexmark toner cartridges and developer components for the life of the patented printer. Under this patent license, you agree to: (1) use only genuine Lexmark toner cartridges and developer components with this printer except as otherwise provided below, and (2) pass this license/agreement to any subsequent user of this printer. The patented Lexmark toner cartridges and developer components inside are licensed subject to a restriction that they may be used only once. Following their initial use, you agree to return them only to Lexmark for recycling. Lexmark toner cartridges are designed to stop working after a delivering a fixed amount of toner. A variable amount of toner may remain in them when replacement is required. Replacement toner cartridge(s) sold without these terms are available through www.lexmark.com, may be refilled by you, or a third party, as the only cartridge alternative to be used with the licensed printer.

LEXMARK SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This Software License Agreement ("Software License Agreement") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Lexmark International, Inc. ("Lexmark") that, to the extent your Lexmark product or Software Program is not otherwise subject to a written software license agreement between you and Lexmark or its suppliers, governs your use of any Software Program installed on or provided by Lexmark for use in connection with your Lexmark product. The term "Software Program" includes machine-readable instructions, audio/visual content (such as images and recordings), and associated media, printed materials and electronic documentation, whether incorporated into, distributed with or for use with your Lexmark product.

1 **STATEMENT OF SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY**. Lexmark warrants that the media (e.g., diskette or compact disk) on which the Software Program (if any) is furnished is free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use during the warranty period. The warranty period is ninety (90) days and commences on the date the Software Program is delivered to the original end-user. This limited warranty applies only to Software Program media purchased new from Lexmark or an Authorized Lexmark Reseller or Distributor. Lexmark will replace the Software Program should it be determined that the media does not conform to this limited warranty.

2 **DISCLAIMER AND LIMITATION OF WARRANTIES**. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, LEXMARK AND ITS SUPPLIERS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM "AS IS" AND HEREBY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND ABSENCE OF VIRUSES, ALL WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM. TO THE EXTENT LEXMARK CANNOT BY LAW DISCLAIM ANY COMPONENT OF THE IMPLIED WARRATIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, LEXMARK LIMITS THE DURATION OF SUCH WARRANTIES TO THE 90-DAY TERM OF THE EXPRESS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY.

This Agreement is to be read in conjunction with certain statutory provisions, as that may be in force from time to time, that imply warranties or conditions or impose obligations on Lexmark that cannot be excluded or modified. If any such provisions apply, then to the extent Lexmark is able, Lexmark hereby limits its liability for breach of those provisions to one of the following: providing you a replacement copy of the Software Program or reimbursement of the price paid for the Software Program.

The Software Program may include internet links to other software applications and/or internet web pages hosted and operated by third parties unaffiliated with Lexmark. You acknowledge and agree that Lexmark is not responsible in any way for the hosting, performance, operation, maintenance, or content of, such software applications and/or internet web pages.

3 **LIMITATION OF REMEDY**. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL LIABILITY OF LEXMARK UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT IS EXPRESSLY LIMITED TO THE GREATER OF THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM AND FIVE U.S. DOLLARS (OR THE EQUIVALENT IN LOCAL CURRENCY). YOUR SOLE REMEDY AGAINST LEXMARK IN ANY DISPUTE UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT SHALL BE TO SEEK TO RECOVER ONE OF THESE AMOUNTS, UPON PAYMENT OF WHICH LEXMARK SHALL BE RELEASED AND DISCHARGED OF ALL FURTHER OBLIGATIONS AND LIABILITY TO YOU.

IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK, ITS SUPPLIERS, SUBSIDIARIES, OR RESELLERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, EXEMPLARY, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES, LOST SAVINGS, INTERRUPTION OF USE OR ANY LOSS OF, INACCURACY IN, OR DAMAGE TO, DATA OR RECORDS, FOR CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES, OR DAMAGE TO REAL OR TANGIBLE PROPERTY, FOR LOSS OF PRIVACY ARISING OUT OR IN ANY WAY RELATED TO THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM, OR OTHERWISE IN CONNECTION WITH ANY PROVISION OF THIS SOFTWARE LICENCE AGREEMENT), REGARDLESS OF THE NATURE OF THE CLAIM, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO BREACH OF WARRANTY OR CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR STRICT LIABILITY), AND EVEN IF LEXMARK, OR ITS SUPPLIERS, AFFILIATES, OR REMARKETERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY YOU BASED ON A THIRD-PARTY CLAIM, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THIS EXCLUSION OF DAMAGES IS DETERMINED LEGALLY INVALID. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE-STATED REMEDIES FAIL OF THEIR ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

4 **U.S.A. STATE LAWS**. This Software Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion of limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.

5 **LICENSE GRANT**. Lexmark grants you the following rights provided you comply with all terms and conditions of this Software License Agreement:

a **Use**. You may Use one (1) copy of the Software Program. The term "Use" means storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying the Software Program. If Lexmark has licensed the Software Program to you for concurrent use, you must limit the number of authorized users to the number specified in your agreement with Lexmark. You may not separate the components of the Software Program for use on more than one computer. You agree that you will not Use the Software Program, in whole or in part, in any manner that has the effect of overriding, modifying, eliminating, obscuring, altering or de-emphasizing the visual appearance of any trademark, trade name, trade dress or intellectual property notice that appears on any computer display screens normally generated by, or as a result of, the Software Program.

b **Copying**. You may make one (1) copy of the Software Program solely for purposes of backup, archiving, or installation, provided the copy contains all of the original Software Program's proprietary notices. You may not copy the Software Program to any public or distributed network.

c **Reservation of Rights**. The Software Program, including all fonts, is copyrighted and owned by Lexmark International, Inc. and/or its suppliers. Lexmark reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this Software License Agreement.

d **Freeware**. Notwithstanding the terms and conditions of this Software License Agreement, all or any portion of the Software Program that constitutes software provided under public license by third parties ("Freeware") is licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of the software license agreement accompanying such Freeware, whether in the form of a discrete agreement, shrink-wrap license, or electronic license terms at the time of download or installation. Use of the Freeware by you shall be governed entirely by the terms and conditions of such license.

6 **TRANSFER**. You may transfer the Software Program to another end-user. Any transfer must include all software components, media, printed materials, and this Software License Agreement and you may not retain copies of the Software Program or components thereof. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end-user receiving the transferred Software Program must agree to all these Software License Agreement terms. Upon transfer of the Software Program, your license is automatically terminated. You may not rent, sublicense, or assign the Software Program except to the extent provided in this Software License Agreement.

7 **UPGRADES**. To Use a Software Program identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed to the original Software Program identified by Lexmark as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the original Software Program that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.

8 **LIMITATION ON REVERSE ENGINEERING**. You may not alter, decrypt, reverse engineer, reverse assemble, reverse compile or otherwise translate the Software Program or assist or otherwise facilitate others to do so, except as and to the extent expressly permitted to do so by applicable law for the purposes of inter-operability, error correction, and security testing. If you have such statutory rights, you will notify Lexmark in writing of any intended reverse engineering, reverse assembly, or reverse compilation. You may not decrypt the Software Program unless necessary for the legitimate Use of the Software Program.

9 **ADDITIONAL SOFTWARE**. This Software License Agreement applies to updates or supplements to the original Software Program provided by Lexmark unless Lexmark provides other terms along with the update or supplement.

10 **TERM**. This Software License Agreement is effective unless terminated or rejected. You may reject or terminate this license at any time by destroying all copies of the Software Program, together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form, or as otherwise described herein. Lexmark may terminate your license upon notice if you fail to comply with any of the terms of this Software License Agreement. Upon such termination, you agree to destroy all copies of the Software Program together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form.

11 **TAXES**. You agree that you are responsible for payment of any taxes including, without limitation, any goods and services and personal property taxes, resulting from this Software License Agreement or your Use of the Software Program.

12 **LIMITATION ON ACTIONS**. No action, regardless of form, arising out of this Software License Agreement may be brought by either party more than two years after the cause of action has arisen, except as provided under applicable law.

13 **APPLICABLE LAW**. This Software License Agreement is governed by the laws of the Commonwealth of Kentucky, United States of America. No choice of law rules in any jurisdiction shall apply. The UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

14 **UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS**. The Software Program has been developed entirely at private expense. Rights of the United States Government to use the Software Program are as set forth in this Software License Agreement and as restricted in DFARS 252.227-7014 and in similar FAR provisions (or any equivalent agency regulation or contract clause).

15 **CONSENT TO USE OF DATA**. You agree that Lexmark, its affiliates, and agents may collect and use information you provide in relation to support services performed with respect to the Software Program and requested by you. Lexmark agrees not to use this information in a form that personally identifies you except to the extent necessary to provide such services.

16 **EXPORT RESTRICTIONS**. You may not (a) acquire, ship, transfer, or reexport, directly or indirectly, the Software Program or any direct product therefrom, in violation of any applicable export laws or (b) permit the Software Program to be used for any purpose prohibited by such export laws, including, without limitation, nuclear, chemical, or biological weapons proliferation.

17 AGREEMENT TO CONTRACT ELECTRONICALLY. You and Lexmark agree to form this Software License Agreement electronically. This means that when you click the "Agree" or "I accept" button on this page or use this product, you acknowledge your agreement to these Software License Agreement terms and conditions and that you are doing so with the intent to "sign" a contract with Lexmark.

18 CAPACITY AND AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT. You represent that you are of the legal age of majority in the place you sign this Software License Agreement and, if applicable, you are duly authorized by your employer or principal to enter into this contract.

19 ENTIRE AGREEMENT. This Software License Agreement (including any addendum or amendment to this Software License Agreement that is included with the Software Program) is the entire agreement between you and Lexmark relating to the Software Program. Except as otherwise provided for herein, these terms and conditions supersede all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals, and representations with respect to the Software Program or any other subject matter covered by this Software License Agreement (except to the extent such extraneous terms do not conflict with the terms of this Software License Agreement, any other written agreement signed by you and Lexmark relating to your Use of the Software Program). To the extent any Lexmark policies or programs for support services conflict with the terms of this Software License Agreement, the terms of this Software License Agreement shall control.

MICROSOFT CORPORATION NOTICES

1 This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at **http://go.microsoft.om/fwlink/?LinkId=52369**.

2 This product is based on Microsoft Print Schema technology. You may find the terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property at **http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=83288**.

Index

Index

331